

- مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على كل جزء.
- مراجعات شهرية من أسئلة مجمعة من المحافظات وأسئلة مؤلفة.

CONNECT 2025

4th PRIM.

FIRST TERM



Table of contents



Theme 2 Myself and others نفسى والآخرون

Unit 4 Where do you live? أين تعيش؟

Unit 6 What do you do? ماذا تعمل؟

Unit 5 Where do you work? أين تعمل؟

Final Revision & Exams



Part 1:  Previous Year Revision

Revision on Grammar

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة قواعد اللغة التى درسها فى الأعوام السابقة.

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.
نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التى نقوم بها كل يوم.

Affirmative form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ You/ They + (مصدر الفعل) + … .

e.g. I go to bed early every day.

He/ She/ It + (مصدر الفعل + s, es, ies) + … .

e.g. Ahmed studies English in the evening.

لاحظ

s ➡ معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):
e.g. Mom makes delicious dinner for us.

es ➡ الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss , sh, ch, o, x)، يضاف لها (es):
e.g. Wael passes the road carefully.

ies ➡ الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):
e.g. Manal studies her lessons in the evening.

Note إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك (a, e, i, o, u)، أضف حرف الـ (s) فقط:
e.g. Ali plays football every weekend.

Negative form: صيغة النفى:

I/ We/ You/ They + don't + (مصدر الفعل) + … .

e.g. The children don't watch TV at night.

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (مصدر الفعل) + … .

e.g. Eman doesn't eat candies.

ملحوظة

- (inf.) هى اختصار لكلمة (infinitive) وهى تعنى الفعل فى المصدر (فى صورته الأساسية دون أية إضافات).

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):



Question السؤال	Do	I / you / we / they	+ (مصدر الفعل) + ... ?
	Does	he / she / it	



Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do / does.
	No,		don't / doesn't.

 A: Do Egyptians speak Arabic?
B: Yes, they do.

 A: Does Maged go to school on foot?
B: No, he doesn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I / you / we / they	+ (مصدر الفعل) + ... ?
	does	he / she / it	

 A: What sports do you play?
B: I play football.

 A: When does she go to bed?
B: She goes to bed early.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة:

always	دائمًا	Dad always reads newspapers in the morning.
usually	عادةً	I usually read history books.
often	غالبًا	My friends often play with me at school.
sometimes	أحيانًا	She sometimes takes the bus to school.
never	أبدًا	They never swim in the sea.
every (day, week, month, year)	كل (يوم، أسبوع، شهر، سنة)	My mom goes shopping every week.

لاحظ

تأتى الكلمات الدالة فى الجملة كالآتى:

- قبل الفعل مباشرة:

Maha usually gets up at 7 am.

- بعد (verb to be):

She is always happy.

Verb to (be) in the Present Simple Tense
الفعل (يكون) فى زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative form
صيغة الإثبات

I	am	I'm	happy.
He	is	He's	hungry.
She	is	She's	a nurse.
It	is	It's	big.

We	are	We're	early.
You	are	You're	students.
They	are	They're	quiet.

Negative form
صيغة النفى

I	am not	sad.
He	is not = isn't	thirsty.
She	is not = isn't	a pilot.
It	is not = isn't	small.

We	are not = aren't	late.
You	are not = aren't	teachers.
They	are not = aren't	noisy.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

+ **Affirmative:** الإثبات: They are happy. She is sad.

? **Questions:** السؤال: Are they happy ? Is she sad ?

Short Answer: إجابة مختصرة: Yes, they are./ No, they aren't. Yes, she is./No, she isn't.

Wh-questions: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh-word كلمة الاستفهام	am/ is/ are	subject	.... ?

e.g. A: Where are you from?
B: I am from Egypt.

e.g. A: What time is the English lesson?
B: It is at 10 am.

Practice on the Present Simple Tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

1 The sun (shine – shines – shining – to shine) every day.
2 The kids (sing – to sing – sings – singing) beautiful songs.
3 The boys often (player – play – plays – playing) in the park after lunch.
4 My cat (sleeps – sleeping – to sleep – sleep) under the bed every night.
5 Who (do – does – is – are) she?
6 My children (doesn't – aren't – don't – isn't) eat candy for breakfast.
7 My brother (don't – doesn't – aren't – isn't) drink cola.
8 They (aren't – don't – isn't – doesn't) go to bed late on school nights.
9 (Do – Does – Are – Is) Noha and Amira like ice cream?
10 When (do – does – is – are) you often swim?
11 (Do – Does – Are – Is) they do sports at school?
12 Where (do – does– is – are) the teacher work?
13 (Does – Do – Is – Are) it often rain in spring?
14 (Are – Do – Does – Is) your dad a doctor?
15 How (do – does – is – are) Manar go to school?
16 She (am – is – are – does) 10 years old.
17 We (am – is – are – be) very busy at the moment.
18 Nour (am – is – are – be) a good friend.
19 I (am not – isn't – aren't – don't) at work.
20 Are (he – she – it – they) your children?

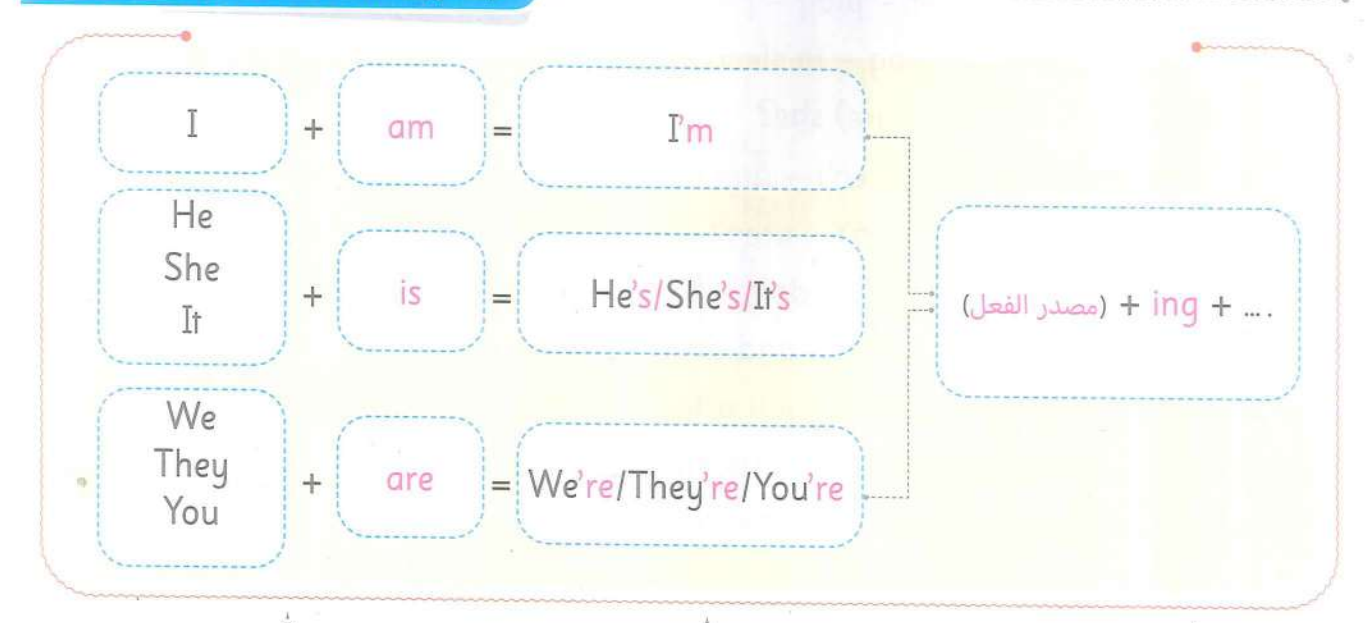
2 Read and correct:

1 Adel often .... (study) after school.
2 They .... (not) play tennis.
3 Huda .... (not) have a car.
4 The children .... (not) play in the street.
5 When .... (do) she go swimming?
6 Mom .... (always) makes lunch. She can't cook.
7 We don't .... (plays) football.
8 What books .... (does) you read?

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous tense to express an action happening right now.
نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.



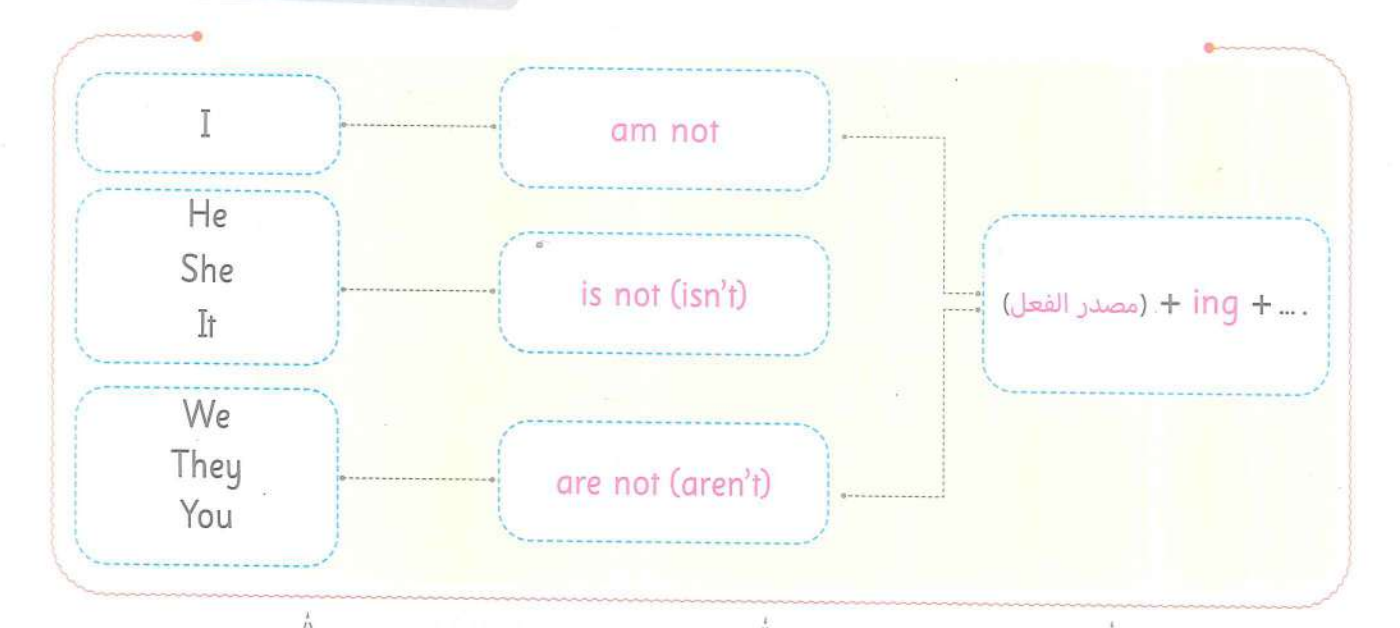


e.g. I am reading a book.

e.g. Hana is watching TV.

e.g. The girls are helping mom.

Negative form: صيغة النفى:

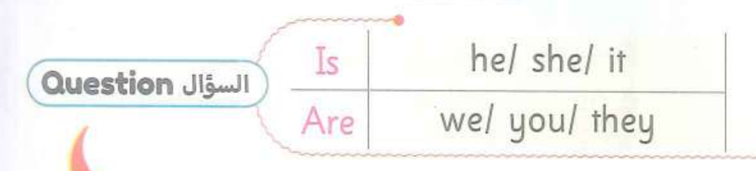


e.g. I am not singing a song.

e.g. Salah isn't collecting magnets.

e.g. The children aren't drawing pictures.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):



Question السؤال

Is	he/ she/ it	(مصدر الفعل) + ing + تكملة السؤال ...?
Are	we/ you/ they	

Answer الإجابة

Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	am/ is/are.
No,		am not/ isn't/ aren't.

e.g. A: Is Noha eating lunch?
B: Yes, she is.

ملحوظة

- تتحول (Are you) فى السؤال إلى (I am) فى الإجابة.



e.g. A: Are you taking photos?
B: No, I am not.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh-word كلمة الاستفهام	am/ is/ are	subject (الفاعل)	(مصدر الفعل) + ing + تكملة السؤال...?

e.g. A: What is Kareem doing?
B: He is doing his homework.

e.g. A: Where are the students going?
B: They are going to school.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة:

Look! انظر!	Look! They are flying a kite.
Listen! استمع!	Listen! the phone is ringing.
now الآن	I'm watching a football match now.
at the moment فى هذه اللحظة	Dad is fixing the car at the moment.
this (time) هذا (وقت)	We're visiting grandma this week.

Practice on the Present Continuous Tense

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

1. My dog is (dig – digging – digs – dug) a hole in the garden.
2. My friends and I are (builds – building – built – build) a sandcastle at the beach.
3. Look! Hadeer (drew – is drawing – draws – draw) a picture of her family.
4. They (sing – sings – are singing – is singing) a happy birthday song at the moment.
5. The car (isn't – am not – aren't – don't) moving.
6. I (isn't – don't – aren't – am not) watching TV right now.
7. We (isn't eating – eats – aren't eating – doesn't eat) dinner.
8. Amira isn't (wear – wearing – wore – wears) a coat today.
9. The children are (laugh – laughing – laughed – laughs) at a funny joke.
10. They (isn't – aren't – don't – doesn't) coming to the park with us.
11. What are they (planning – planned – plans – plan) for today?
12. (Is – Do – Are – Does) you reading a book?
13. (Are – Is – Do – Does) your friend skipping a rope?
14. What (is – are – do – does) she studying?
15. Is (we – I – she – they) helping her mom in the kitchen?
16. Where (do – are – is – does) they sleeping now?
17. (Is – Are – Do – Does) the kids playing under the rain?
18. What (are – am – is – do) the girl listening to?
19. What are you (doing – do – does – did) now?
20. Is Huda (collect – collecting – collects – collected) magnets?

2 Read and correct:

1. I .... (be) eating a sandwich.
2. Manal .... (be) walking to school.
3. We .... (be) running in the club.
4. Maged .... (doesn't) working today.
5. My sisters .... (am not) listening to music.
6. Is your brother .... (do) his homework?
7. No, I .... (am) drawing.
8. What are you .... (do)?



Part 2: Skills

1. Writing Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أساسيات تكوين الجملة.



Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام

Nouns	Pronouns	Verbs	Adjectives	Prepositions
الأسماء	الضمائر	أفعال	الصفات	حروف الجر

Nouns

* هى اسم شخص، حيوان، مكان، أو شيء.

e.g. Ola, cat, house, bus, ...

* قد يأتى الاسم فاعل (بداية الجملة) أو مفعول (بعد الفعل).

e.g. - Ola is six years old.
- The cat is sitting on the table.

Check

Underline the nouns:

1. Mona is clever.
2. Nader likes dogs.
3. I have a friend.

Pronouns

* تحل محل الأسماء.

e.g. I, we, it ....
We are very happy.

e.g. - I go to school by bus.
- It is a bird.

Check

Circle the pronoun:

1. (Ali – He) is clever.
2. (They – Trees) are very tall.
3. What are (Ali – you) reading?

Verbs

* يعبر عن حدث.

e.g. run, study, swim, ...

* يأتى الفعل بعد الفاعل.

e.g. - We run in the park.
- Ola studies English at school.

Check

Read and circle the verbs:

Habiba likes her school. She meets her friends there. She plays with them. They study their lessons and go home happily.

Adjectives

* تصف الأسماء والضمائر.

e.g. tall, happy, pretty, ...

* قد تأتى الصفة قبل الاسم أو بعد الفعل (be).

e.g. - We can see a tall tree.
- The girl is happy.

Check

Circle the adjective out:

1. read – Adel – big – me
2. you – nice – school – run
3. clever – chair – book – write

Preposition

* للدلالة عن الوقت أو المكان.

e.g. in, next to, on, ...

* تأتي حروف الجر قبل اسم أو ضمير آخر.

e.g. - She wakes up in the morning.
- The house is next to the park.

Check

Read and reorder:

1 under – The cat – is – the table.

....

2 at – night – We – sleep.

....

3 the – is – My – on – desk – book.

....



Prepositions of Time:

لاحظ استخدامات حروف الجر الآتية:

at	with times: مع الأوقات	3 o'clock/ 3:30/ night
in	with months, seasons, and years: مع الشهور، والفصول، والسنوات	summer/ May/ the morning/ 2018
on	with days and dates: مع الأيام والتواريخ	Friday/ 5th May/ May 5th

Check

Read and choose:

1 We don't go to school (by – on – to) Fridays.

2 I study science (of – at – on – in) six o'clock.

3 I go to Aswan (in – on – at – up) March.

4 My birthday is (on – in – at – to) June 7th.

5 See you (in – on – at) Friday.

6 I brush my teeth (in – on – at) the morning.

7 The match is (in – on – at) 4 o'clock.

8 He usually goes on holiday (in – on – at) July.



Sentence Formation تكوين الجملة

* فى اللغة الإنجليزية لا توجد جمل اسمية وجمل فعلية ولكن تتكون الجملة من الآتى:

Subject الفاعل	+	Verb الفعل	+	Completement تكملة الجملة
e.g. I wake up early.		e.g. Hana eats cakes.		e.g. We love reading.

١. الفاعل (subject): هو من قام بالفعل ودائمًا ما يأتى فى بداية الجملة ويمكن أن يكون اسم (شخص/ بلد/ مكان/ حيوان/ شىء) أو ضميرًا:

e.g.
- Heba takes the bus to school.
- Monkeys eat bananas.
- Cairo is a big city.
- The bag is new.
- My bedroom is nice.
- They go swimming on Friday.

Check

Read and choose the correct subject:

1. (A school – A table – Amr) listens to music.
2. (My father – A goat – A river) is a framer.
3. (The chair – The tree – The cake) is tall and green.

٢. الفعل (verb): هو ما قام به الفاعل.

 I like fruits. Miss Sarah is my teacher. The boys are playing in the park.

Check

Read and underline the verb:

1. We help our mom.
2. Habiba cleans the bedroom.
3. I am walking to school.

٣. تكملة الجملة (completement): هو ما يأتى بعد الفعل مباشرة وقد تكون (اسمًا / ضميرًا / صفة / ظرفًا / حرف جر/ ...).

e.g.
- Mona wears a dress.
- Sara sings beautifully.
- She is in the kitchen.
- I visit my uncle on Monday.
- Elephants are big.

Check

Read and reorder:

1. ready – Lunch – is. ....
2. at – comes – The moon – night. ....
3. music – Hani – listening to – is. ....



Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من معرفة بعض علامات الترقيم التى تساعده فى الكتابة بشكل سليم.



Capital letters
الحروف الكبيرة

فى بداية الجملة (الخبرية/ الأمرية)/ السؤال/ أيام الأسبوع/ الشهور/ الضمير (I) فى أى مكان بالجملة/ اللغات/ الجنسيات/ أسماء الأشخاص/ البلدان/ الأماكن الشهيرة.

e.g.
1. Ali lives in Aswan.
2. Huda speaks English and French.
3. I visited Alexandria last June.
4. Dad will arrive on Tuesday.

Check

Punctuate the following:

1. ola is an english teacher. ....
2. my dad's name is sami. ....
3. yesterday was sunday. ....



Period (Full stop)
النقطة

فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

e.g. Dad goes to work by bus.
Open the door, please.



Question mark
علامة الاستفهام

فى نهاية السؤال.

* **Wh- question:**
e.g. Where are my keys?
* **Yes/No Question:**
e.g. Do you have a car?



Exclamation mark
علامة التعجب

نضع علامة التعجب (!) فى نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التى تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوى.

e.g. Hello!/ Wow!/ I'm excited!

Check

Punctuate the following using (. – ? – !):

1. The newspaper is on the table ....
2. What are you doing ....
3. I love chocolate cakes ....
4. Well done ....
5. Are you hungry ....
6. Hi ....



نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

e.g. Mom bought some milk, eggs, and bread.

تستخدم بعد «Yes/ No» فى الإجابات.

No, Dad isn't here.

تستخدم قبل «but».

I like singing, but I don't like drawing.

تستخدم قبل «please» إذا جاءت فى نهاية الجملة.

Can I have some water, please?

Check

Put the (,) in the right place:

1 Can you help me please?
2 Hossam is good at playing football tennis and handball.
3 Yes I will be there on time.



توضع قبل «S» الملكية.

e.g. Nour's birthday is tomorrow.

توضع فى الاختصارات.

There's a book under the desk.
Omar isn't at school.

Check

Put the (') in the right place:

1 Omar s dad is a teacher.
2 We re playing football.
3 Where s your house?

Practice on punctuation marks

Find and write TWO (2) missing punctuation marks:

1 adel likes reading writing, and painting. ....
2 Mrs Mona is an english teacher ....
3 What s your favorite hobby ....
4 where does Hana live ....
5 No she isn't from alexandria. ....
6 i like playing football ....
7 don't talk in the library please. ....



Tips for writing a paragraph نصائح لكتابة فقرة

How to write a paragraph

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة إنشائية بطريقة صحيحة.

- استخدم علامات الترقيم الصحيحة punctuation.
- اترك مسافة صغيرة قبل أول جملة.
- ابدأ الجملة بحرف كبير capital letter.
- ضع نقطة آخر الجملة (.) period.
- استخدم جملًا بسيطة مرتبة.
- استخدم الزمن المناسب.
- تأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء إملائية.

مسافة قبل أول جملة

أول كل جملة حرف capital

My city

My name is Nadia and I live in the Alexandria. Alexandria is a wonderful city to live in. We live in a big house next to the Alexandria library. There are many places to visit in Alexandria. You can visit museums, parks, and the beach. You can visit the Alexandria Library if you like reading. I love my city.

نهاية كل جملة (period)

تأكد من استخدام علامات الترقيم (comma)

2. Reading Skills



Wh- questions

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة كلمات الاستفهام والإجابة عن المطلوب بطريقة صحيحة.

What ...? ما/ماذا

للسؤال عن نوع ماهية الأشياء.

e.g. A: What is this?
B: This is a pen.

Where ...? أين

للسؤال عن المكان.

e.g. A: Where do you live?
B: I live in Cairo.

When ...? متى

للسؤال عن الوقت.

e.g. A: When do you go to bed?
B: I go to bed at 9.00 o'clock.

Who ...? من

للسؤال عن العاقل.

e.g. A: Who is he?
B: He is my grandpa.

Whose ...? لمن

للسؤال عن الملكية.

e.g. A: Whose watch is this?
B: This is my watch./This watch is mine.

Which ...? أي

للسؤال عن الاختيار.

e.g. A: Which toy do you want?
B: I want the pink doll.

Check

Read and choose:

1 A: (What – How) is this? B: This is my watch.
2 A: What is that? B: It's my (book – Cairo).
3 (What's – When's) your father's name?
4 (What – Who) is she?
5 A: Who is this? B: This is (my pen – my friend).
6 A: (Where – Who) bought the cake? B: Mom.
7 A: (Who – Which) dress do you want? B: The red dress.
8 A: (What – Where) do you live? B: I live in Giza.
9 (When – Where) will you come home?
10 A: (What – When) is the exam? B: It's next week.

How ...? كيف

للسؤال عن الحال ووسيلة المواصلات.

e.g. A: How do you go to work?
B: I go to work by taxi.

How many ...? كم العدد

للسؤال عن العدد.

e.g. A: How many desks are there?
B: There are ten desks.

How old ...? كم العمر

للسؤال عن العمر.

e.g. A: How old are you?
B: I'm seven years old.

How long ...? كم الطول

للسؤال عن الأطوال الأفقية.

e.g. A: How long is your classroom?
B: It is 6 meters long.

How much ...? كم الثمن

للسؤال عن الثمن.

e.g. A: How much is the birthday cake?
B: It's fifty pounds.

Why ...? لماذا

للسؤال عن السبب.

e.g. A: Why do you go to school?
B: I go to school to learn.

Check

Read and choose:

1 (Who – How) many oranges are there in the box?
2 How (much – many) books did she read?
3 A: How many students are there? B: (At school – Ten).
4 (Who – How) old are you?
5 How (many – old) is your brother?
6 A: How old is he? B: He's (a teacher – 20).
7 A: How (long – old) is the window? B: It's 90 cm.
8 A: How do you go to school? B: I go to school (at 8 am – on foot).
9 A: (What – Why) are you happy? B: Because I've got a car.
10 A: (Who – How) are you, Naglaa? B: I'm fine, thank you.



How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions
كيفية الإجابة على أسئلة قطعة الفهم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من إجابة أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

للإجابة على قطعة القراءة المكونة من (70 – 80) كلمة فى الورقة الامتحانية، اتبع الإرشادات الآتية:

My name is Amira. Look at my healthy lunchbox. I help my mom prepare my lunchbox. I wash the vegetables and fruits. Mom cuts the carrots and cucumbers, and I make the sandwich. I don't like to drink cola. Mom makes some fresh orange juice, and on some days I take a bottle of milk. I like healthy food because it makes me feel strong.

A) Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

Identify the general idea of the text.
لتحدد الفكرة العامة من النص، عليك قراءة الفقرة كلها مرتين ثم قراءة الاختيارات جيدًا واختيار الإجابة التى تتمحور حولها القطعة.

The general idea of the text is about ....
a) video games   b) being healthy   c) schools   d) Amira

Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
عليك أن تركز مع تفاصيل القطعة وربط الأحداث ببعضها وكذلك الترابط والعلاقات ما بين الأشخاص والأشياء فى القطعة.

Amira doesn't like to drink ....
a) water   b) milk   c) cola   d) orange juice

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.
لتحديد واستنتاج معانى الكلمات وما تشير إليه، عليك قراءة الجملة التى وردت فيها الكلمة لتستنتج معنى الكلمة بناء على المعنى العام للجملة.

The underlined word "healthy" means ....
a) bad   b) harmful   c) good   d) weak

B) Answer the following questions:

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
عليك الانتباه إلى الروابط والعلاقة ما بين الأشياء والأشخاص ببعضها، وعليك كذلك التركيز على ترتيب المعلومات وعلاقتها ببعضها البعض.

What drinks does Amira take to school?
She takes fresh orange juice, and on some days she takes a bottle of milk.

Make logical inferences from the text.
عليك التركيز على عناصر وأجزاء المعلومات لتستخرج من النص المعلومات المطلوبة.

Why does Amira like healthy food?
Amira likes healthy food because it makes her feel strong.

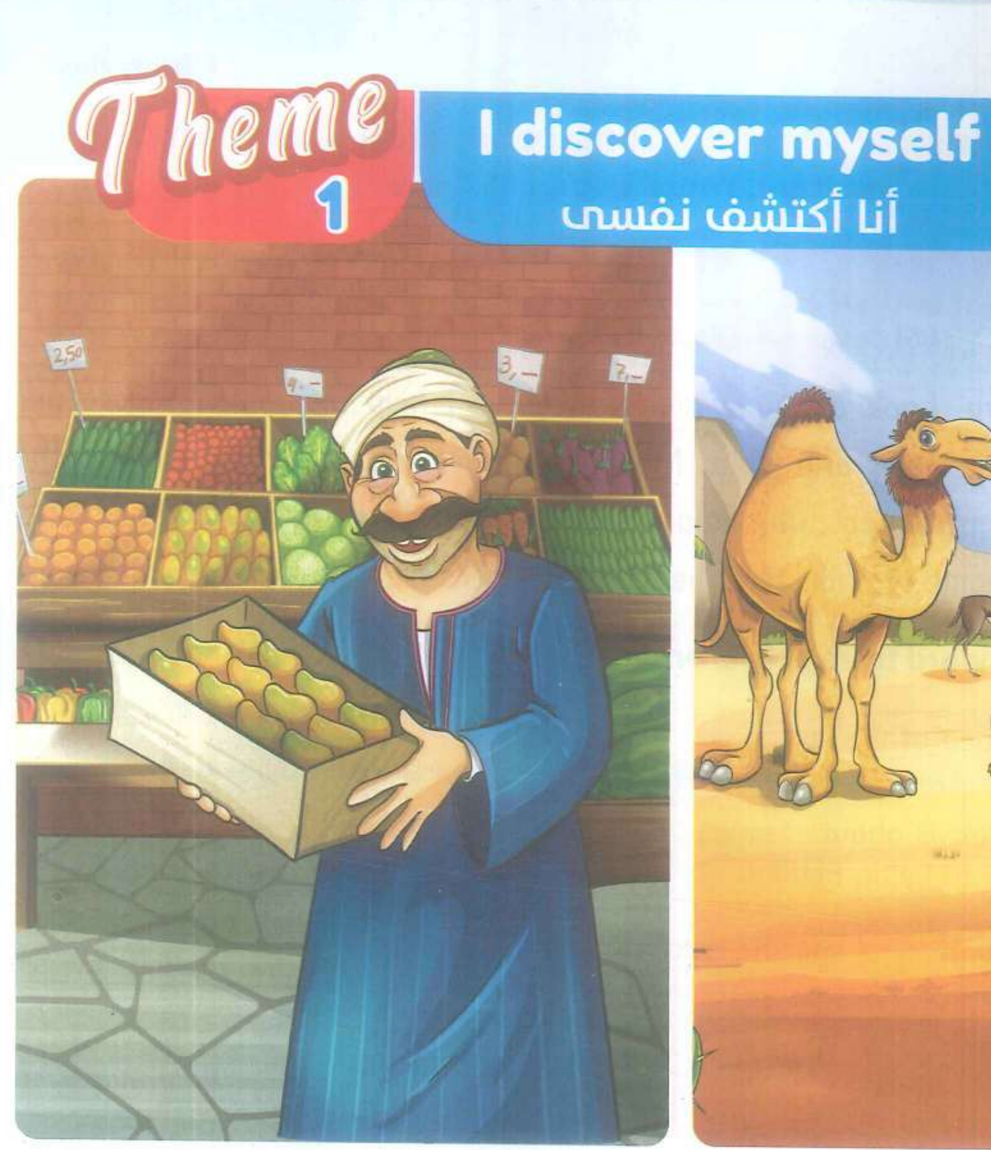
Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.
لتتمكن من تلخيص الفقرة، عليك قراءة القطعة جيدًا واستخرج النقاط الهامة والرئيسية وضعها فى جمل مفيدة.

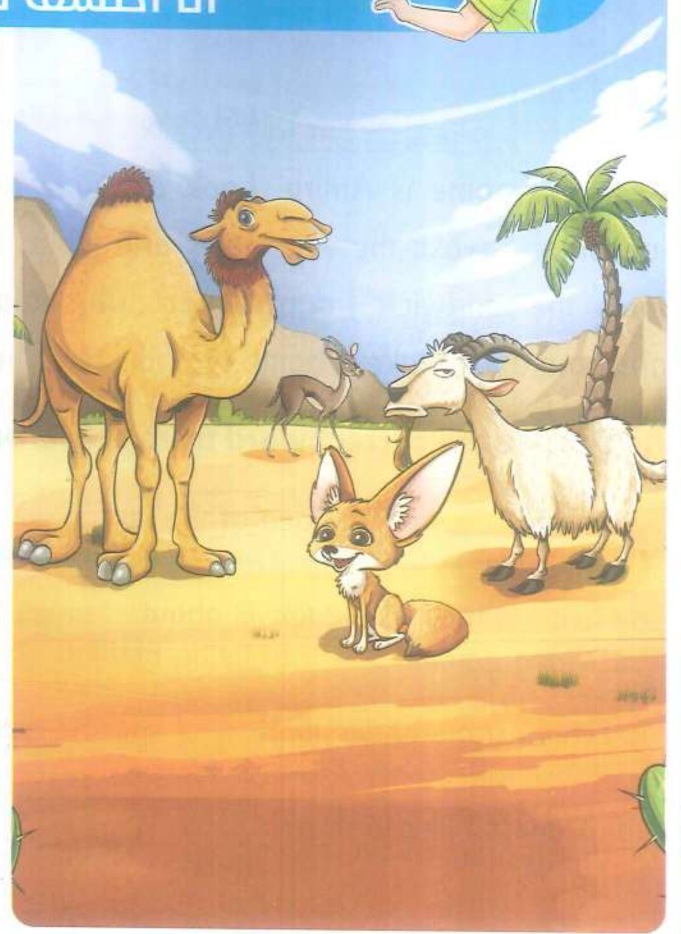
Summarize the text in two sentences.
Amira eats healthy food. She helps her mom prepare her lunchbox.

Theme 1

I discover myself

أنا أكتشف نفسي







Unit 1 I feel good

أشعر أنى بحالة جيدة

Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy.
- practice making sentences with "and" or "but".
- read and listen to a Chinese folktale.
- distinguish long and short vowels.
- talk about a place in Egypt.
- research and make a presentation.

- يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الطعام وكيفية البقاء بصحة جيدة.
- يتدرب على استخدام «و» و «لكن».
- يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة صينية شعبية.
- يميز بين أصوات الحروف المتحركة الممدودة والقصيرة.
- يتحدث عن مكان فى مصر.
- يبحث ويقوم بعمل عرض تقديمى.

Did you know?

- In Japan, you can buy a watermelon that looks like a *pyramid, but you can't find it in Egypt.

Find out!

- People grow many different fruits in Egypt, like bananas, watermelons, dates, *figs, and *pomegranates.

*pyramid	هرم	*figs	تين	*pomegranates	رمان



Lesson 1
Foods and drinks
أطعمة ومشروبات

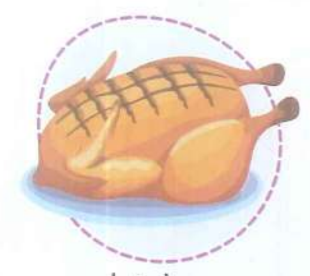


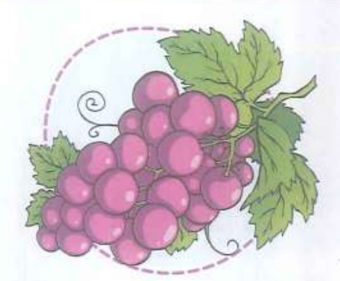


1. Listen, point, and say:
استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary


chicken
دجاج

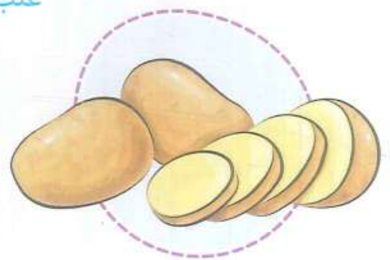

grapes
عنب

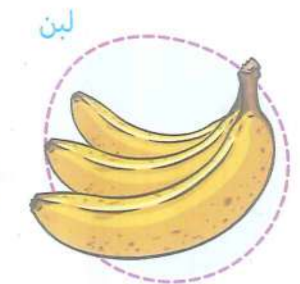


milk
لبن


onions
بصل

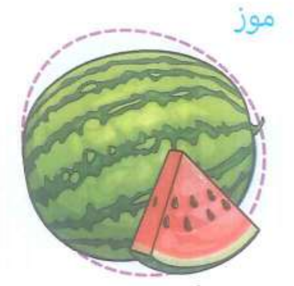

rice
أرز


potatoes
بطاطس


bananas
موز


mangoes
مانجو


sugarcane
قصب السكر


watermelon
بطيخ

Extra vocabulary

lunch	وجبة الغداء	ready (adj.)	جاهز	special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز
delicious (adj.)	شهى/لذيذ	country	دولة	meal	وجبة
breakfast	وجبة الفطار	dinner	وجبة العشاء	Egyptian (adj.)	مصرى
farmers	مزارعون	healthy (adj.)	صحى	vegetables	خضراوات



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش) كما فى (chicken).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما فى (rice).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (su) ينطقان /ʃʊ/ (شو) كما فى (sugarcane).
- لاحظ أن المقطع (cious) ينطق /ʃəs/ (شس) كما فى(delicious).

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
produce	ينتج	produced	raise	يربى (للماشية)	raised

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع/ يعمل	made	grow	يزرع/ ينمو	grew
come	يأتى	came	eat	يأكل	ate
think	يعتقد	thought	see	يرى	saw

Expressions and Phrases

It looks delicious!	يبدو شهيًّا!	That's right.	هذا صحيح.	What else?	ماذا أيضًا؟
Let's eat!	هيا نأكل!	Yum!	لذيذ/ شهى!	have a meal	يتناول وجبة

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Mom made some special food for us. قامت أمى بتحضير بعض الطعام المميز لنا.
* We grow rice in Egypt. نحن نزرع الأرز فى مصر.
* Egyptian farmers raise chickens in Egypt. يربى المزارعون المصريون الدجاج فى مصر.
* Egyptian farmers produce many things. ينتج المزارعون المصريون العديد من الأشياء.

Take care!

* "raise" is for animals such as chickens, goats, and cows.
* "grow" is for plants such as rice, tomatoes, and onions.



Find out!

Farmers in Egypt raise other animals like goats, sheep, cows, and donkeys.

المزارعون فى مصر يربون حيوانات أخرى مثل الماعز والأغنام والأبقار والحمير.



Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 We grow vegetables like tomatoes and (grapes – onions – watermelon – mangoes) in Egypt.
2 Egyptian farmers (think – raise – produce – look) many things you can see on this table.
3 Farmers (grow – raise – make – plant) chickens in Egypt.
4 We (raise – grow – think – look) rice in Egypt.
5 Apples and (mangoes – rice – onions – potatoes) are my favorite fruits.
6 I eat chicken and rice for (dinner – breakfast – lunch – snack).



2. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:





Mom: Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.

الغداء جاهز. قمت بإعداد بعض الطعام المميز لنا.



Maged: Mom, it looks delicious!

أمي، إنه يبدو شهيًا!



Mom: Which food comes from our country, do you think?

أي طعام يأتي من بلدنا في اعتقادك؟



Maged: I think we grow rice in Egypt.

أعتقد أننا نزرع الأرز في مصر.



Mom: Yes, that's right. What else?

نعم، هذا صحيح. وماذا أيضًا؟





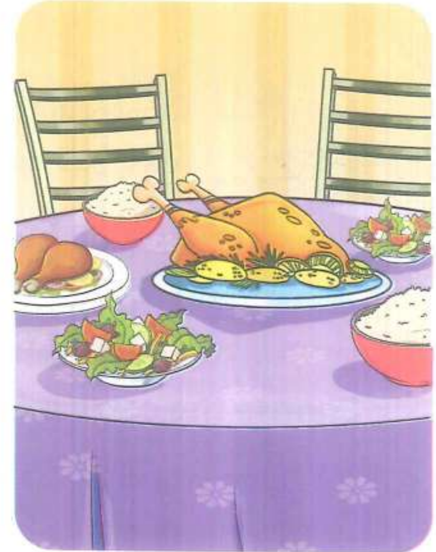
Maged: Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt.

مممم، أعتقد أننا نربي الدجاج في مصر.



Mom: Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table. Let's eat!

نعم، وطماطم وبصلًا. المزارعون المصريون ينتجون الكثير من الطعام الموجود على تلك الطاولة، هيا نأكل!





Maged: Yum!

لذيذ!





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Hana and her mom made .... in the kitchen.
a) dinner b) snack c) breakfast d) lunch

2 They cooked rice, potatoes, and ....
a) meat b) bread c) chicken d) fish

3 They had .... and mangoes after lunch.
a) bananas b) grapes c) watermelon d) sugarcane

4 The food was very ....
a) cold b) hot c) delicious d) dry

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Egyptian .... produce many foods for us.
a) farmers b) doctors c) teachers d) nurses

2 Habiba always drinks .... in the morning. It's healthy.
a) onions b) potatoes c) animals d) milk

3 I like .... very much. We make sugar out of it. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2022
a) onions b) watermelons c) sugarcane d) chicken

4 I eat .... in the morning. محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه أول التعليمية 2024
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) juice

5 Mangoes and .... are my favorite fruits.
a) onions b) bananas c) rice d) potatoes

6 We grow .... in Egypt. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية - يناير 2024
a) bike b) rice c) car d) bus

7 Farmers grow rice and .... They help us eat good food.
a) potatoes b) chairs c) chicken d) animals

محافظة الغربية - إدارة غرب المحلة الكبرى التعليمية 2022

8 Mom cooks special food for us. Yum! It looks ....
a) bad b) unhealthy c) delicious d) cold

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة أجا التعليمية 2024

raise – grow – produce – shoot – country

Lots of the food we eat every day comes from our country. Farmers ....(1).......... rice, potatoes, and tomatoes in Egypt. Egyptian farmers ....(2).......... chickens, sheep, cows, goats, and many other animals. Farmers ....(3).......... many things that we can buy from the shops or the supermarkets. Egypt is our great ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين 2024

My name is Kareem. I live with my family in Ismailia. We have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the time we sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. Today, we are having potatoes and chicken for lunch. It looks delicious!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We have .... meals every day.
a) two b) one c) four d) three

2 We are having potatoes and chicken for .... today.
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) break

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Kareem's family live?

....

4 Why does Kareem like lunch?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1 i made special food for us

....

2 we grow rice in egypt.

....



Lesson 2





I am Healthy أنا بصحة جيدة



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

interviewer محاور/مذيع	healthy (adj.) صحى/ بصحة جيدة	unhealthy (adj.) غير صحى
walking المشى	wheelchair كرسى متحرك	scientist عالم

Extra vocabulary

different (adj.) مختلف	candy حلوى	favorite (adj.) مفضل
awesome (adj.) رائع	milkshake ميلك شيك (مشروب لبن مخفوق)	basketball كرة السلة
team فريق	cola مياه غازية	video games ألعاب الفيديو
busy (adj.) مشغول	desert صحراء	burgers سندوتشات البرجر
a week أسبوعيًا	yummy (adj.) لذيذ	salads سلاطات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present	Past	Present	Past
walk يمشى	walked	practice يتدرب	practiced
talk يتحدث	talked	want يريد	wanted
love يحب	loved	play يلعب	played

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
eat يأكل	ate	go يذهب	went
make يصنع	made	see يرى	saw
drink يشرب	drank	think يعتقد	thought

Expressions and Phrases

do sports يمارس الألعاب الرياضية	on the weekend فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
go walking يتمشى	like looking at يحب النظر إلى



Listening script page 6 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Interviewer

Do you think you're healthy, Judy?

هل تعتقدين أنك بصحة جيدة يا جودى؟



Judy

Yes, I do. I do a lot of sports at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake!

نعم أنا كذلك. أمارس الكثير من الرياضة فى المدرسة. فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أمشى إلى منزل جدتى مع عائلتى. أحب المشى حقًا لأننى أستطيع التحدث إلى أمى وأبى. يمكننا أن نرى المنازل والمحلات التجارية المختلفة. أنا لا آكل الحلوى، لكنى أحب الفاكهة. فاكهتى المفضلة هى الموز والبطيخ. أمى تصنع ميلك شيك موز رائعًا!



Interviewer

Do you think you're healthy, Adam?

هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة يا آدم؟



Adam

Yes, I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball in the park.

نعم، أنا عضو فى فريق كرة السلة على كرسى متحرك فى المدرسة. نتدرب ثلاث مرات كل أسبوع. أنا أشرب الكولا، لكنى أريد أن أشرب المزيد من الماء. أنا لا ألعب ألعاب الفيديو لأننى مشغول للغاية. ألعب كرة السلة فى الحديقة.



Interviewer

Do you think you're healthy, Dareen?

هل تعتقدين أنك بصحة جيدة يا دارين؟



Dareen

Yes, I think I'm healthy. My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very hot sometimes! I only drink water because I don't like cola. I love burgers, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes yummy salads.

نعم، أعتقد أننى بصحة جيدة. أنا وأمى نسير فى الصحراء مع والدى. أبى عالم ويحب النظر إلى الحيوانات والنباتات. نذهب معه فى عطلة كل أسبوع. الأمر ممتع للغاية، لكن الطقس حار جدًا فى بعض الأحيان! أنا أشرب الماء فقط لأننى لا أحب الكولا. أنا أحب البرجر، لكنى آكله مرة واحدة فقط فى الأسبوع. أمى تصنع سلطات لذيذة.





Language Focus

Conjunctions الروابط

Conjunctions are words that connect different parts of a sentence. They are used to show relationships between ideas or events.

الروابط هى كلمات تستخدم لربط أجزاء الجملة المختلفة وتوضح العلاقات بين الأفكار أو الأحداث.

and We use "and" to join two similar ideas.

نستخدم «and» لربط فكرتين متشابهتين.



I eat vegetables and I exercise.
(eat vegetables) / (exercise)

فكرتان متشابهتان ويكملان بعضهما.

but We use "but" to join two contrasting ideas.

نستخدم «but» لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.



I want to play football, but my leg hurts.
(want to play) / (my leg hurts)

فكرتان مختلفتان وعكس بعضهما.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I love healthy food. I like fruits (and – but) vegetables.
2 Hana drinks cola, (but – and) she wants to drink more water.
3 I think I'm healthy, (and – but) I need to eat less candy.
4 Ahmed practiced well for the race, (and – but) he didn't win.
5 Omar is in the basketball team (but – and) practices twice a week.
6 It's a very interesting place, (but – and) it's very hot sometimes. 

7 Waleed studied his lessons (and – but) went to bed early last night.
8 Nader likes sports. He practices basketball (and – but) walks home every day.
9 I love playing video games, (but – and) I only play them on Saturday. 

10 Hamza never eats unhealthy food (but – and) does a lot of sports at school.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 My dad is a/an .... and he likes looking at plants and animals.
a) teacher b) basketball player c) scientist d) interviewer

2 I don't eat .... It's unhealthy.
a) fruits b) candy c) bananas d) vegetables

3 She's an active player. She .... three times a week.
a) walks b) goes c) practices d) makes

4 Ola doesn't like playing video games, ... she likes playing outside.
a) because b) but c) and d) so

5 He loves burgers, ... he only eats one a week.
a) so b) that c) but d) and

6 Mom makes delicious cakes .... yummy salads.
a) so b) but c) and d) because

7 I like playing tennis, ... I can't play it well. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2022
a) because b) but c) so d) to

8 Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is ....
a) healthy b) scary c) tired d) unhealthy

9 I eat healthy food .... I exercise. (Mid-year Exams)
a) but b) and c) because d) so

10 I think I'm .... I like to play basketball.
a) bad b) sick c) healthy d) unhealthy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

make – football – cola – play – practice

محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة الشهداء التعليمية 2023

I am in a basketball team at school. I don't drink ....(1)............ . I drink only water. We ....(2)............ three times every week. I don't ....(3)............ video games because I am busy. I play basketball and ....(4)............ in the park.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1. Mona sleeps early .... (but) wakes up early every day.
2. Mazen is a good player, ... (and) he needs to practice more.
3. They don't eat candy .... (but) they don't drink cola.
4. I studied hard, ... (and) I didn't pass the exam.
5. She loves pizza, ... (and) doesn't eat it.
6. The kids drink water .... (but) do a lot of sports at school.
7. My brother likes running, ... (and) he doesn't like swimming.
8. My mom likes reading .... (but) writing short stories.
9. I play tennis .... (but) football. محافظة الإسماعيلية 2024
10. She likes to play football, ... (and) she can't play it. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة العاشر من رمضان 2024

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i do a lot of sports at school محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية 2023

....

2. my mom makes a delicious cake

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية:

مجاب عنه صفحة 286 محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2023

"I am healthy"

do a lot of sports – fruits and vegetables – practice 3 times every week

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





Story



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

folktale	قصة شعبية	emperor	إمبراطور	palace	قصر
competition	مسابقة	gardener	جناينى/ بستانى	honest (adj.)	صادق/ أمين

Extra vocabulary

empty (adj.)	فارغ	pot	وعاء	China	الصين
important (adj.)	هام	beautiful (adj.)	جميل	seed	بذرة
plant	نبتة	the next	التالى	garden	حديقة
dead (adj.)	ميت	honesty	الأمانة / الصدق	winning	الفوز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	happen	يحدث	happened
try	يحاول	tried	work	يعمل	worked
plant	يزرع	planted	water	يسقى	watered

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
give	يعطى	gave	say	يقول	said
grow	يزرع	grew	win	يفوز	won
bring	يحضر	brought	take	يأخذ	took

Expressions and Phrases

long ago	منذ زمن بعيد	one day	ذات يوم	bring back	يحضر / يعيد
very good at	جيد جدًا فى ...	nothing happened	لم يحدث شىء	try for weeks	يحاول لأسابيع
work hard	يعمل بجد	only you	فقط أنت	look after	يعتنى بـ

Definitions

emperor	is someone who is like a king	هو شخص مثل الملك
palace	is where an emperor lives	المكان الذى يعيش به الإمبراطور
honest	is someone who doesn't lie	هو شخص لا يكذب
competition	is when someone tries to win	عندما يحاول شخص ما أن يفوز

The Empty Pot: A folktale from China
الوعاء الفارغ: قصة شعبية من الصين



2. Look and read:
انظر واقرأ:



The beginning

1 Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the emperor. He lived in a beautiful palace.
عاش تشنغ منذ زمن بعيد فى الصين. كان أهم رجل فى الصين هو الإمبراطور. كان يعيش فى قصر جميل.

The middle

2 One day the emperor said, "There will be a competition. I will give a seed to each gardener. The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor." "Take the pot and the seed. Plant it." says the emperor. "Make it grow into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me." Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew.
ذات يوم قال الإمبراطور: «ستكون هناك مسابقة. سأعطى بذرة لكل بستانى. الشخص الذى يمكنه زراعة أجمل نبات من البذرة سيكون هو الإمبراطور القادم.» «خذ الوعاء والبذرة وازرعها». «يقول الإمبراطور: «اجعلها تنمو لتصبح نبتة جميلة. ثم أحضر النبات لى». كان تشنغ جيدًا جدًّا فى زراعة الأشياء والعناية بحديقته. وضع البذرة فى الشمس وأعطاها الماء. ولكن لم يحدث شيء. حاول تشنغ لأسابيع ولكن لم ينم أى نبات. كان البستانيون الآخرون لديهم نباتات قد نمت».

The end

3 At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants. "Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng. "I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng. "But it didn't grow." "Then you win!" says the emperor. "The seeds I gave everyone were dead. The seeds cannot grow. Only you are good and honest. So you will be the next emperor!"
فى القصر، جميع البستانيين لديهم نباتات جميلة. «أين نبتتك؟» سأل الإمبراطور تشنغ. لقد عملت بجد. كنت أسقيها كل يوم.» يقول تشنغ. «لكنها لم تنمو.» «إذًا أنت تفوز!» يقول الإمبراطور. البذور التى أعطيتها للجميع ميتة. البذور لا يمكن أن تنمو. أنت الوحيد الجيد والصادق. لذلك ستكون الإمبراطور القادم.»

The moral of the story

Honesty is more important than winning.
الأمانة (الصدق) أكثر أهمية من الفوز.

Check

1 Where did Cheng live?



....

2 What did the emperor give to all the gardeners?

....

3 Why did Cheng win the competition?

....



B Pronunciation

Short and long vowels الحروف المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة





3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

There are five vowels in English: **a, e, i, o, and u**

Short vowels

When vowels are used alone (with no other vowel) in a syllable, they make a short vowel sound.

عندما يتم استخدام حروف متحركة وحدها (مع عدم وجود حرف متحرك آخر) فى مقطع لفظى، فإنها تصدر صوتًا متحركًا قصيرًا.

e.g.



a /æ/ — bag حقيبة



i /ɪ/ — mix يخلط



o /ɒ/ — mom أم

Long vowels

When a word ends with the letter 'e', the first vowel makes a long sound.

عندما تنتهى الكلمة بالحرف «e»، فإن الحرف المتحرك الأول يصدر صوتًا طويلًا.

e.g.

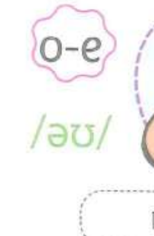


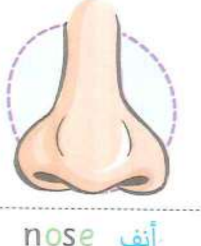
a-e /eɪ/ — cake كيك





i-e /aɪ/ — rice أرز





o-e /əʊ/ — nose أنف

Language Note

- "Re" is a prefix added to the verb to give the meaning of "again".

"Re" هى بادئة يتم وضعها قبل الفعل لتعطى معنى (مجددًا) على سبيل المثال:

plant يزرع → replant يزرع مجددًا   paint يدهن → repaint يدهن مجددًا   do يفعل → redo يفعل مجددًا

make يصنع → remake يصنع مجددًا   clean ينظف → reclean ينظف مجددًا

e.g. Shaimaa did her homework again. = Shaimaa redid her homework.

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Mom (replanted – recleaned – redid) the room last night.

2 You need to (remake – repaint – redo) the wall. I don't like the color.





Comparing large digits: Ascending order

مقارنة الأرقام الكبيرة: ترتيب تصاعدى



4. Look and say:

انظر وقل:

Large numbers mean numbers more than 1000.

الأرقام الكبيرة هى الأرقام الأكبر من ١٠٠٠.

Step (1):
Say 5 hundred

Step (2):
Say 44 thousand

544,432

Step (3):
Say 4 hundred

Step (4):
Say the number 32

Number in words: Five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two



Ascending order means arranging numbers from the smallest to the greatest.

الترتيب التصاعدى يعنى ترتيب الأرقام من الأصغر إلى الأكبر.

e.g. Rearrange the numbers in ascending order:

87,909 – 87,092 – 87,990 ⟶ 87,092 – 87,909 – 87,990

e.g. - 655,534 ≤ 698,881 – 1000,000,000 ≥ 99,999,999



Find out!

The numerical digits we use today 1, 2, and 3 are based on the Hindu-Arabic numeral system. This system was developed over 1000 years ago.

تستند الأرقام العددية التى نستخدمها اليوم ١ و ٢ و ٣ على نظام الترقيم الهندى العربى. تم تطوير هذا النظام منذ أكثر من ١٠٠٠ عام.



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 I read a story about an emperor ....

a) last week b) a year ago c) last month d) yesterday

2 The emperor lived in a nice ....

a) house b) garden c) palace d) home

3 The emperor gave a .... to each gardener.

a) seed b) pot c) plant d) flower

4 The one with the most beautiful plant, would be the next ....

a) gardener b) emperor c) king d) winner

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 When the seed is ...., it cannot grow.

a) good b) dead c) green d) hard

2 Omar is really .... He never lies.

a) honest b) important c) hard d) dead

3 Everyone tries to win in the ....

a) palace b) garden c) pot d) competition

4 The .... planted many seeds in the garden.

a) king b) emperor c) gardener d) doctor

5 A seed grows into a beautiful ....

a) pot b) garden c) palace d) plant

6 The gardener put the .... in the sun and gave it water to grow.

a) emperor b) seed c) competition d) pot

7 An emperor is someone who is like a ....

a) farmer b) plumber c) king d) gardener

8 An honest person doesn't ....

a) talk b) lie c) work d) win

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

garden – small – color – repaint – friend

My house is old. I wanted to make it beautiful. I decided to ....(1).............. it. The new ....(2).............. was red. I planted some fruits in the ....(3).............. to make the house more beautiful. My ....(4).............. helped me. We were happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Noha is a clever student in grade four. Her favorite hobby is reading short stories. Last week, she read a folktale from China about an emperor who lived in a big palace. The emperor made a competition to choose the next emperor. He gave some seeds to the gardeners and asked them to grow the seeds into beautiful plants. The seeds were dead, and the emperor wanted to know who would be honest with him. Noha learned that when you're honest, you win.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the story is about a folktale from ....

a) Egypt b) Japan c) China d) England

2 .... is more important than winning.

a) Competition b) Honesty c) Seed d) Palace

B Answer the following questions:

3 What's Noha's favorite hobby?

....

4 Why did the emperor make a competition?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 eman lived in china.

....

2 cheng was very good at growing things

....



Lessons 4 & 5



Writing



1.Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

land	أرض	Damietta	محافظة دمياط	governorate	محافظة
farmers	فلاحون	fishermen	صيادون	Domiati cheese	الجبن الدمياطى

Extra vocabulary

nutrients	عناصر غذائية	wheat	قمح	lemons	ليمون
grapes	عنب	guavas	جوافة	thousands	آلاف
goats	ماعز	sheep	أغنام	famous (adj.)	مشهور
a half million	نصف مليون	part	جزء	life	حياة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew	catch	يمسك (يصطاد)	caught

Expressions and Phrases

rich in	غنى بـ	catch fish	يصطاد السمك
famous for	مشهور بـ	good for crops	جيد للمحاصيل

Important sentences جمل هامة

* The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. الأرض فى محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية.
* Farmers grow wheat, lemon, grapes, and guava. يزرع المزارعون القمح والليمون والعنب والجوافة.
* Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. يصطاد الصيادون آلاف الأسماك من البحر.
* Domiati cheese is very famous. الجبن الدمياطى مشهور جدًا.

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The land in Damietta governorate is (poor – bad – rich – famous) in nutrients.
2 Fishermen catch (fish – wheat – plants – rice) in the sea.
3 Farmers grow (goats – lemons – sheep – cows).
4 Fruits are (poor – weak – rich – expensive) in vitamins.



2.Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Food from Damietta
طعام من دمياط



The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.
The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas.
Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.
Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous.
About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

الأرض فى محافظة دمياط مليئة بالمواد الغذائية. يستطيع المزارعون زراعة الأرز، الطماطم، البطاطس، القمح، الليمون، العنب والجوافة.
يصطاد الصيادون آلاف الأسماك فى البحر. يعيش البقر، والماعز والأغنام فى محافظة دمياط أيضًا. الجبنة الدمياطى مشهورة جدًّا.
يعيش حوالى مليون ونصف المليون شخص فى هذا الجزء من مصر. الحياة جيدة فى دمياط.

Check

1 What can farmers grow in Damietta?

....

2 What is Damietta famous for?

....

3 How many people live in Damietta?

....



Lessons 4&5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Damietta is an Egyptian ....
a) river b) desert c) mountain d) governorate

2 The land in Damietta is rich in ....
a) fishermen b) farmers c) nutrients d) cheese

3 .... in Damietta grow wheat, lemons, and grapes.
a) Farmers b) Animals c) Fishermen d) Fish

4 About one and a half million people .... in Damietta.
a) grow b) catch c) live d) raise

5 Cows, goats, and .... are animals that live in Damietta, too.
a) wheat b) sheep c) rice d) lemons

6 .... catch thousands of fish in the sea in Damietta.
a) Fishermen b) Farmers c) Vets d) Teachers

7 Damietta is famous for Domiati ....
a) fish b) rice c) cheese d) wheat

8 Farmers in Damietta grow many kinds of fruits like lemons, grapes, and ....
a) rice b) wheat c) guavas d) cheese

9 Crops need a .... that is rich in nutrients to grow well.
a) sea b) governorate c) farmer d) land

10 Life is .... in Damietta. Many people live happily there.
a) bad b) unhealthy c) good d) difficult

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

Domiati – land – farmer – rice – goats

Ola and Hamza are brother and sister. They live in an Egyptian governorate called Damietta. Ola and Hamza's father is a ....(1)............ . He grows many crops like wheat, ...(2)............, and fruits. He also raises many animals like cows, ...(3)............, and sheep. Their mother makes and sells ....(4)............ cheese. Ola and Hamza think life is good in Damietta.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes, and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes, and chicken. Life is good in the village.

محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية 2022

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Farmers grow fruits and ....

a) cheese b) chicken c) vegetables d) villages

2 Omar lives in a small ....

a) city b) village c) town d) desert

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do farmers raise?

....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

life is good in damietta.

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

"My governorate"

- Where is it?
- What is it famous for?
- What do farmers produce there?

....

....

....

....

Unit 1 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

chicken	لحم دجاج	grapes	عنب
milk	لبن	onions	بصل
rice	أرز	potatoes	بطاطس
bananas	موز	mangoes	مانجو
sugarcane	قصب السكر	watermelon	بطيخ
farmers	مزارعون	country	دولة
ready	جاهز	meal	وجبة
lunch	وجبة الغداء	special	خاص/ مميز
delicious	لذيذ	vegetables	خضراوات
dinner	عشاء	breakfast	الإفطار

Lesson (2)

interviewer	محاور / مذيع	healthy	صحى/ بصحة جيدة
unhealthy	غير صحى	walking	المشى
wheelchair	كرسى متحرك	scientist	عالم
different	مختلف	candy	حلوى
favorite	مفضل	basketball	كرة السلة
team	فريق	busy	مشغول
cola	مياه غازية	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
salads	سلاطات	desert	صحراء
burgers	سندوتشات برجر	yummy	لذيذ

Lesson (3)

folktale	قصة شعبية	emperor	امبراطور
palace	قصر	China	الصين
competition	مسابقة	gardener	جناينى / بستانى
honest	أمين	empty	فارغ
pot	وعاء	important	مهم
seed	بذرة	plant	نبتة
dead	ميت	beautiful	جميل
bag	حقيبة	mix	يخلط
mom	أم	cake	كيك
rice	أرز	nose	أنف

Lessons (4 & 5)

land	أرض	Damietta	محافظة دمياط
governorate	محافظة	farmers	مزارعون
fishermen	صيادون	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
Domiati cheese	الجبن الدمياطى	thousands	آلاف
wheat	قمح	lemons	ليمون
guavas	جوافة	goats	ماعز
sheep	أغنام	famous	مشهور
a half million	نصف مليون	part	جزء

Language Focus

Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words that connect different parts of a sentence. They are used to show relationships between ideas or events. e.g. and, but

and

We use "and" to join two similar ideas.



I eat vegetables and I exercise.

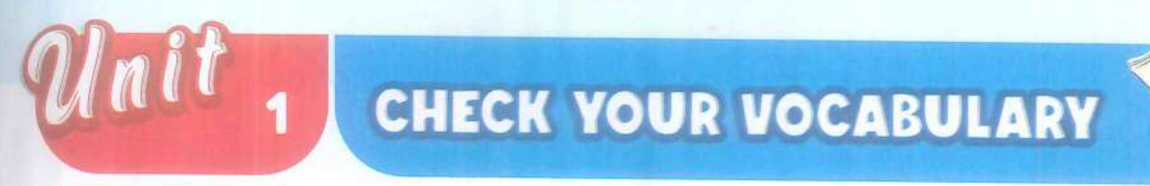
but

We use "but" to join two contrasting ideas.





I want to play football, but my leg hurts.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

بطاطس	....	دجاج	....
موز	....	عنب	....
مانجو	....	لبن	....
قصب السكر	....	بصل	....
بطيخ	....	وجبة الغداء	....
دولة	....	مزارعون	....
لذيذ	....	جاهز	....
أرز	....	خاص / مميز	....

Lesson 2

غير صحى	....	صحى/ بصحة جيدة	....
كولا	....	حلوى	....
كرة السلة	....	المشى	....
صحراء	....	عالم	....
محاور	....	كرسى متحرك	....
مشغول	....	فريق	....

Lesson 3

إمبراطور	....	قصر	....
جناينى/ بستانى	....	مسابقة	....
صادق/ أمين	....	قصة شعبية	....
وعاء	....	الصين	....
يخلط	....	أم	....
كيك	....	حقيبة	....
بذرة	....	أنف	....

Lessons 4 & 5

عناصر غذائية	....	أرض	....
قمح	....	محافظة دمياط	....
جوافة	....	مشهور	....
الجبن الدمياطى	....	ليمون	....
أغنام	....	صيادون	....
غنى بـ	....	ماعز	....

WRITING TIME




لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about food in your country:

- I live in + (اسم بلدك).
- Our country produces ... .
- We grow + (اسم المحاصيل التى تزرع فى بلدك).
- Farmers raise + أسماء حيوانات أو طيور to + الفائدة من الحيوانات .

"Food in my country"

I live in Egypt. Our country produces many foods that we eat every day.
We grow many different foods in Egypt. We grow rice, potatoes, onions, tomatoes, and many other things. Farmers raise chickens, cows, goats, and many other animals to get eggs and meat.

How to write about being healthy:

- I think it is important to be + صفة .
- I + (فعل صحى تقوم بعمله).
- I eat + أكل صحى and + نشاط صحى آخر .
- I don't like + شىء غير صحى , but I like + شىء صحى .

"How to be healthy"

I think it is important to be healthy. I do a lot of sports at school. I eat healthy foods like fruits and vegetables and I exercise every day. I don't like cola, but I like drinking water. It's good for our health.

How to write about your governorate:

- I live in + اسم المحافظة .
- Farmers grow + اسم المحصول .
- They raise + أسماء حيوانات أو طيور , too.
- (اسم المحافظة) is famous for + شىء مميز بالمحافظة .
- About + عدد الأشخاص الذين يعيشون فى المحافظة live in this part of Egypt.

"Damietta governorate"

I live in Damietta governorate. The farmers in Damietta grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas.
They raise cows, goats, and sheep, too. Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt.

Unit 1 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the letters to make food words: أكمل الحروف لتكمل كلمات الطعام:

1. w_term_lon
2. ban_nas
3. p_tat_es
4. r_c_
5. m_ng_es
6. m__k
7. gr_p_s
8. o_io_s
9. sugarc__e
10. ch_cke_

2 Read and complete the sentences with "and" or "but": اقرأ وأكمل الجمل بـ «and» أو «but»:

1. I don't eat candy, ... I eat fruit when I want something sweet.
2. I don't drink cola, ... I drink fresh juices.
3. I play basketball .... I play football in the park.
4. Dad is a scientist, ... he likes looking at animals and plants.
5. It's a very interesting place, ... it's very hot sometimes!

3 Circle the correct meaning: ضع دائرة حول المعنى الصحيح:

1. An emperor is someone who is like a ....
   a) king b) farmer
2. A palace is where an emperor ....
   a) travels b) lives
3. Someone who is honest ....
   a) does not lie b) lies
4. In a competition, someone tries to ....
   a) win b) lose







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

6

1. Talia thinks she is ....
   a) lazy b) healthy c) sick d) unhealthy
2. On the weekend, Talia walks to her .... house.
   a) aunt's b) uncle's c) grandma's d) parents'
3. Talia likes .... because she can talk to mom and dad.
   a) walking b) studying c) running d) swimming
4. They can see different houses and ....
   a) homes b) animals c) people d) shops

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

1. Farmers in my country ....chickens and cows.
   a) plant b) grow c) raise d) drink
2. Our house is old. We need to .... it. محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة العجمى التعليمية 2022
   a) repaint b) record c) remake d) redo
3. My favorite fruits are bananas and ....
   a) onions b) chickens c) potatoes d) grapes
4. What foods do we .... in Egypt?
   a) raise b) produce c) catch d) make

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

4

raise – farmers – grow – vegetables – Life

My name is Omar. I'm nine years old. I live in a small village in Egypt. The ....(1)............ in my village grow different kinds of ....(2)............ like potatoes, onions, and carrots. They also ....(3)............ animals like goats, cows, and chickens to get meat or eggs. ....(4)............ is good in my village.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

The land in Egypt is rich in nutrients. We produce vegetables like onions, potatoes, and tomatoes. We produce fruits like grapes, guavas, and mangoes. Also, farmers raise chickens to get eggs and meat. They keep and feed cows, sheep, and goats to get milk and meat. Food from Egypt is delicious.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2023

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... in Egypt.

a) food b) money c) cows d) eggs

2 Farmers raise chickens to get ....

a) milk b) fruits c) eggs d) water

B Answer the following questions:

3 Which animals do farmers get milk from? ....

4 What does Egypt produce? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

4

1 The lights are off .... (but) I can't read the letter.

2 Heba likes playing tennis, ... (and) she can't play it well.

3 They love writing stories .... (but) reading books.

4 Sama wanted to come early, ... (because) she missed the bus.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1

egyptian farmers produce many things

محافظة الفيوم - إدارة إطسا التعليمية 2023

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الآتية:

5

محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة العامرية التعليمية 2024

"Food in our country"

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

Farmers grow ... – Farmers raise ...

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 1 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Adam is in a wheelchair .... team at school.

a) table tennis b) basketball c) handball

2 Adam practices .... times every week.

a) two b) four c) three

3 Adam drinks ...., but he wants to drink more water.

a) cola b) milk c) juice

2 Read and complete the dialogue: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

vegetables – food – healthy – sports

Ali : Do you think you're ...., Asser?

Aser : Yes, I do. I do a lot of .... at school.

Ali : What healthy .... do you eat?

Aser : I always eat fruits and ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة:

1 salads – My – yummy – makes – mom.

....

2 Ali – bike – yesterday – his – recleaned.

....

3 produce – in Egypt – What – food – do – we?

....

4 long – in – China – ago – lived – Cheng.

....

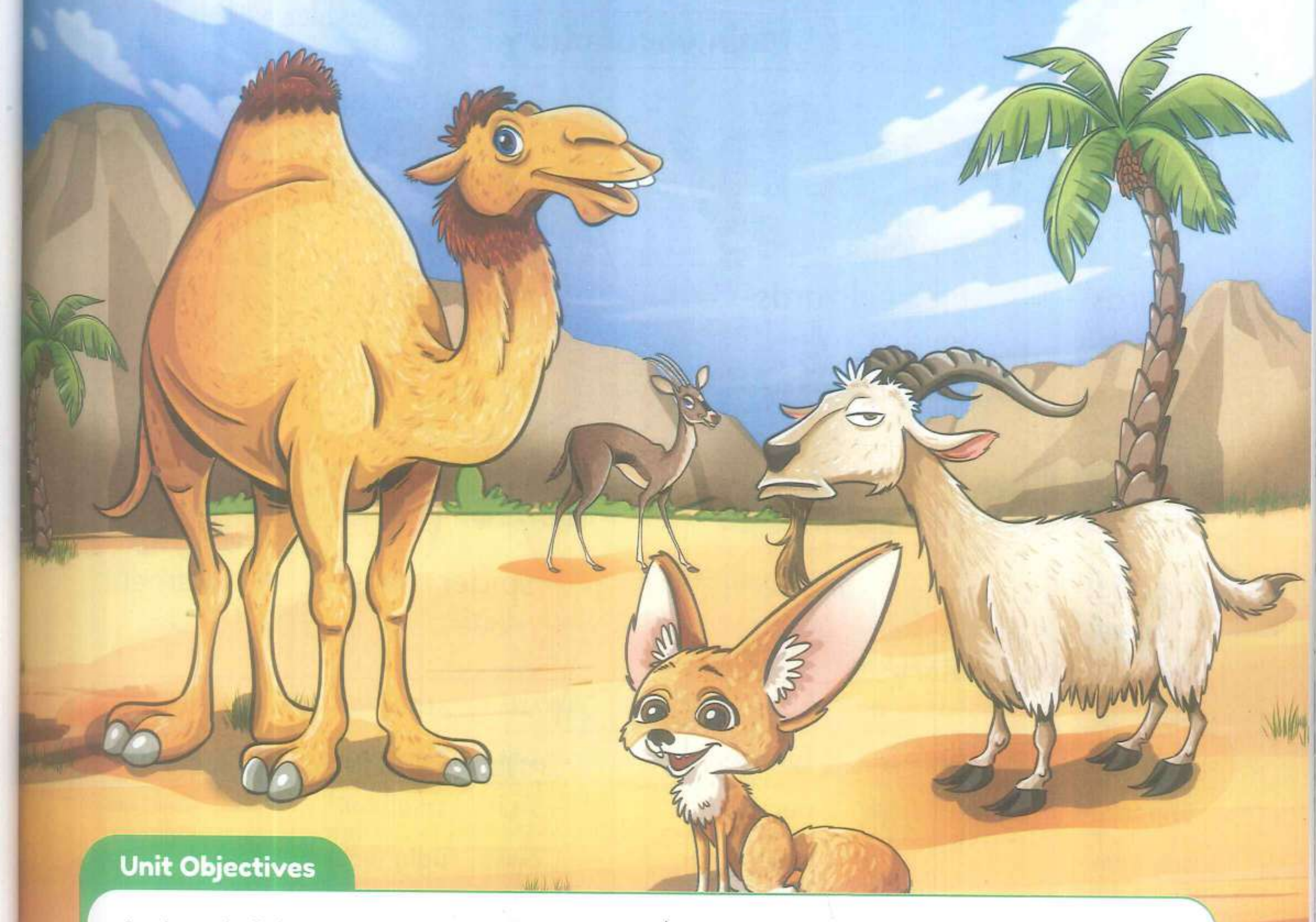
5 grow – I – we – rice – think – in Egypt.

....

Unit 2

Desert animals

الحيوانات الصحراوية



Unit Objectives

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
  - listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.
  - practice making comparisons.
  - listen to a short story.
  - learn about the difference between the /p/ and /b/ sounds.
  - describe two animals.
  - write a fact file.
  - research and make a poster.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن حيوانات الصحراء.
  - يتدرب على عمل المقارنات.
  - يستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
  - يتعلم الفرق بين صوتى الـ /p/ و الـ /b/.
  - يصف اثنين من الحيوانات.
  - يكتب ملف حقائق.
  - يبحث ويصمم ملصقًا.

Did you know?

- The Sahara Desert *covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but *Antarctica is bigger!

Find out!

- The Sahara Desert is a desert on the African *continent with an area of 9,200,000 square kilometers, it is the third-largest desert overall. Penguins, *elephant seals, and killer whales are animals that live in the Antarctic Desert while gazelles, sand foxes, and *chameleons live in the Sahara Desert.

*covers	يغطى	*Antarctica	القارة القطبية الجنوبية	*continent	قارة
*elephant seal	فيل البحر	*chameleons	الحرابى		



Lesson 1
Animals in Egypt
حيوانات فى مصر





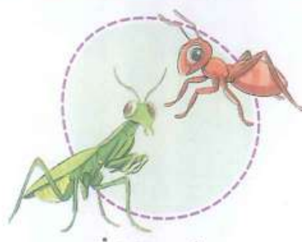
1. Listen, point, and say:
استمع، أشر، وقل:



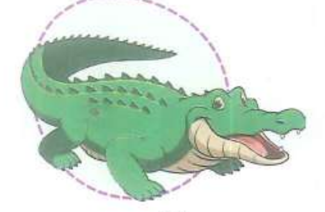



birds
طيور


lizards
سحالى

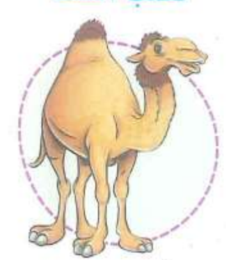

insects
حشرات


fennec fox
ثعلب الفنك


crocodile
تمساح


snake
ثعبان


spider
عنكبوت


camel
جمل

Extra vocabulary

country	بلد	huge (adj.)	هائل/ ضخم	scary (adj.)	مخيف
helpful (adj.)	مفيد (مساعد)	farmers	فلاحون/ مزارعون	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
important (adj.)	هام	numbers	أرقام	small (adj.)	صغير الحجم
sometimes	أحياناً	cute (adj.)	لطيف	ugly (adj.)	قبيح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
like	يحب	liked	control	يتحكم	controlled

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يعتقد/ يفكر	thought	eat	يأكل	ate



- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) فى (huge)/(dangerous) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (th) فى (think) ينطقان (θ) (ث).

Expressions and Phrases

I think ...	أنا أعتقد ...	What about...?	ماذا عن ...؟	that's true.	هذا حقيقى.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Spiders are very helpful.

العناكب مفيدة جدًا.

* Farmers like spiders because they eat insects.

المزارعون يحبون العناكب لأنهم يأكلون الحشرات.

* Crocodiles are huge and scary.

التماسيح ضخمة ومخيفة.

* Crocodiles and snakes control the number of small animals.

التماسيح والثعابين يتحكمون فى أعداد الحيوانات الصغيرة.



- أضف المقطع (ful) لتكوين صفة من الفعل (help):

help + ful = helpful متعاون/ مساعد

- تأتى الصفة (adjective) قبل الاسم أو بعد فعل "يكون" verb to be لوصف الاسم.

e.g. - Look at the scary snake. - Spiders are helpful.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Both camels and (crocodiles – fennec foxes – ducks – fish) live in the desert.

2 (Camels – Insects – Birds – Snakes) don't have any legs, but they can move fast.

3 The camel lives in the (sea – sky – river – desert).

4 Different kinds of (lizards – snakes – birds – camels) can fly.

5 (Crocodiles – Snakes – Camels – Spiders) eat insects and farmers like them.

6 (Foxes – Crocodiles – Insects – Camels) are smaller than birds.

7 Adam always helps his friends. He is very (help – helpless – helpful – bad).

8 The snake is very (beautiful – scary – cute – helpful). I don't like it.

9 (Camels – Fish – Birds – Crocodiles) are very dangerous.

10 Egypt is a (city – village – sea – country).



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



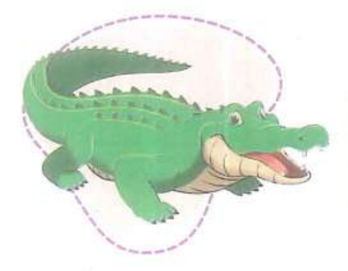
Are snakes and crocodiles important? هل الثعابين والتماسيح مهمة؟



Mom

Look at all these animals that live in our country.

انظروا إلى كل هذه الحيوانات التى تعيش فى بلدنا.





Sara

Look at the crocodile, it's huge!

انظروا إلى التمساح، إنه ضخم!



Tarek

Huge and scary!

ضخم ومخيف!





Sara

I think the spider is scarier.

أنا أعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.



Mom

Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.

نعم، ولكن العناكب مفيدة جدًّا؛ فهى تأكل الحشرات. يحب المزارعون العناكب.





Sara

OK, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're dangerous, aren't they?

حسنًا، ماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح؟ إنهم خطيرون، أليس كذلك؟



Mom

Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

نعم، هذا صحيح، ولكنهما يقومان بعمل مهم جدًّا. فهما يأكلان الحشرات، والطيور، والسحالى. وهذا يتحكم فى أعداد الحيوانات الصغيرة. فى بعض الأحيان نعتقد أن بعض الحيوانات مخيفة أو قبيحة، لكن كلها ذات أهمية.





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 There are a lot of .... that live in our country.
a) people b) animals c) birds d) fish

2 The .... is huge and scary.
a) snake b) camel c) crocodile d) spider

3 Spiders are very ....
a) huge b) scary c) small d) helpful

4 All animals are ....
a) important b) big c) scary d) ugly

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... are huge and scary. They have sharp teeth.
a) Birds b) Insects c) Lizards d) Crocodiles

2 .... live in the deserts.
a) Bears b) Camels c) Dolphins d) Fish

3 Camels are perfect for the ....
a) sea b) river c) lake d) desert

4 Look at those beautiful .... flying in the sky.
a) camels b) crocodiles c) birds d) lizards

5 Spiders eat ....
a) insects b) camels c) birds d) snakes

6 The .... is a small type of foxes that live in the desert.
a) bird b) camel c) fennec fox d) snake

7 There are many animals that .... in our country.
a) live b) meet c) think d) play

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

helpful – important – huge – animals – food

محافظة القاهرة – منطقة هليوبولس التعليمية 2022

In our country, there are many ....(1)............... . There are crocodiles. They're ....(2)............... and scary. There are also spiders. Spiders are very ....(3)............... They eat insects. Animals are all ....(4)............... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Tarek and Sara's favorite subject at school is science. This week, they are studying animals that live in Egypt. Camels and fennec foxes are animals that live in the desert. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they control the number of small animals. Spiders really look scary, but they are very helpful. They eat small insects. That's why farmers like them. All animals are important.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) science lessons b) Tarek and Sara
c) animals in Egypt d) spiders and farmers

2 Camels and .... are animals that live in the desert.

a) spiders b) fennec foxes c) crocodiles d) insects

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do snakes and crocodiles do?

....

4 Why do farmers like spiders?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 farmers like spiders

....

2 They eat insects birds, and lizards

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

"Animals in Egypt"

spiders – dangerous – helpful

....
....
....
....



Lesson 2





A Amazing Desert Animals حيوانات الصحراء المذهلة



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

camel جمل	amazing (adj.) مذهل	beautiful (adj.) جميل
delicious (adj.) لذيذ	perfect (adj.) ممتاز/ مثالى	flat (adj.) مسطح
noisy (adj.) مزعج	horse حصان	hump سنام الجمل

Extra vocabulary

surprising (adj.) مدهش	strong (adj.) قوى	fur فرو
clothes ملابس	large (adj.) كبير الحجم	feet أقدام
sand رمال	without بدون	special (adj.) خاص
way طريقة	grass حشائش	fresh water مياه عذبة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present	Past	Present	Past
help يساعد	helped	cross يعبر	crossed
use يستخدم	used	walk يمشى	walked
carry يحمل	carried	stop يتوقف	stopped

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
have يمتلك	had	drink يشرب	drank
sink يغرق	sank	come in يدخل	came in
make يصنع	made	get يحصل على	got

Expressions and Phrases

perfect for مثالى لـ	Here's why إليك السبب	live without يعيش بدون
for a long time لفترة طويلة	stop (something) from يمنع شيئًا ما من	Be careful! كن حذرًا!
get angry يغضب	live in يعيش فى	look after يعتنى بـ



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ci) فى (delicious) / (special) ينطقان / ʃ / (ش).



Find out! There are fats and water in the camel's hump that the camel uses when it is hungry or thirsty.

توجد دهون ومياه فى سنام الجمل، يستخدمها عندما يشعر بالجوع أو العطش.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes!
Camels are perfect for the desert. Here's why:
Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand. Camels can live without water for a long time. Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.
But be careful! Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.


الجمال حيوانات مذهلة! فهى جميلة وقوية؛ تساعدنا فى حمل الأشياء والأشخاص لنعبر الصحراء. ألبانها لذيذة. يمكن أن نستخدم الفراء الخاصة بها فى صناعة الملابس!
الجمال مثالية للصحراء. وها هى الأسباب: أقدامها كبيرة ومسطحة لذلك لا تغرق فى الرمال. تستطيع الجمال العيش بدون ماء لمدة طويلة. لدى الجمال طرق خاصة لغلق أنفها وأعينها لمنع الرمال من الوصول لعينها وأنفها. ولكن احذر! الجمال مزعجة جدًّا ويمكن أن تغضب.



Choose the correct answer:

1 Camels are (perfect – bad – dangerous – long) for the desert.
2 Camels can live without (grass – water – air – sleep) for a long time.
3 We can use camels' fur to make (bags – clothes – hats – shoes)!
4 Camels have large, flat feet so they don't (eat – drink – fly – sink) in sand.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Camels help us carry things and people to cross the desert.
الجمال تساعدنا على حمل الأشياء والأشخاص لنعبر الصحراء.
* Camels are perfect for the desert.
الجمال مثالية للصحراء.
* Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand.
الجمال لديها أقدام كبيرة ومسطحة لذلك لا تغرق فى الرمال.
* Horses eat grass and drink fresh water.
الأحصنة تأكل الحشائش وتشرب الماء العذب.



3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Differences between horses and camels الفروق بين الأحصنة والجمال

		Horse	Camel
تستخدم للسؤال عن طول شخص أو شيء.	How tall is it? كم يبلغ طوله؟	1.4 – 1.8 m	1.8 – 2.0 m
تستخدم للسؤال عن الوزن.	How heavy is it? كم وزنه؟	380 – 550 kg	400 – 650 kg
تستخدم للسؤال عن السرعة.	How fast is it? كم تبلغ سرعته؟	88 kph	65 kph
تستخدم للسؤال عن المدة.	How long does it live? كم المدة التى يعيشها؟	25 – 30 years	40 years

Horses have large, beautiful eyes.

تملك الأحصنة عيونًا كبيرة وجميلة.



Horses eat grass and drink fresh water.

تأكل الأحصنة العشب وتشرب المياه العذبة.



Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

تستطيع الأحصنة العيش فى الصحراء، ولكنها تحتاج إلى الرعاية من الناس.



لاحظ الاختصارات:

m = meter متر | kg = kilogram كيلوجرام | kph = kilometers per hour كيلومتر / الساعة

Check

1 How can camels help us?

....

2 What do horses eat and drink?

....

3 Why do horses need people?

....



Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

Comparative adjectives are words used to compare two things or people.

صفات التفضيل هى كلمات لمقارنة شيئين أو شخصين.

A) Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

عند المقارنة بين شيئين باستخدام الصفات القصيرة (ذات المقطع الواحد) نضع "er + than" بعد الصفة.

short adjective صفة قصيرة + er + than

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (er) وبعدها (than):

old ⟶ older

small ⟶ smaller

e.g. The mouse is smaller than the horse.



الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، يضاف لها (r) وبعدها (than):

large ⟶ larger

nice ⟶ nicer

e.g. Crocodiles are larger than birds.



الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ier) وبعدها (than):

heavy ⟶ heavier

angry ⟶ angrier

e.g. The elephant is heavier than the lion.



الصفات المنتهية بحرف (ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاف لها (er) بعدها (than) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:

big ⟶ bigger

thin ⟶ thinner

e.g. Snakes are thinner than crocodiles.



Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 The elephant is (big – a big – biggest – bigger) than the ant.
2 All cars are (fast – faster – fastest – the fast) than bikes.
3 The snake is thinner (than – that – then – the) the monkey.
4 Camels are (tall – tallest – taller – a tall) than horses.
5 My house is (large – largest – larger – larger than) your house.
6 My brother is (short – shorter – shortest – a short) than me.

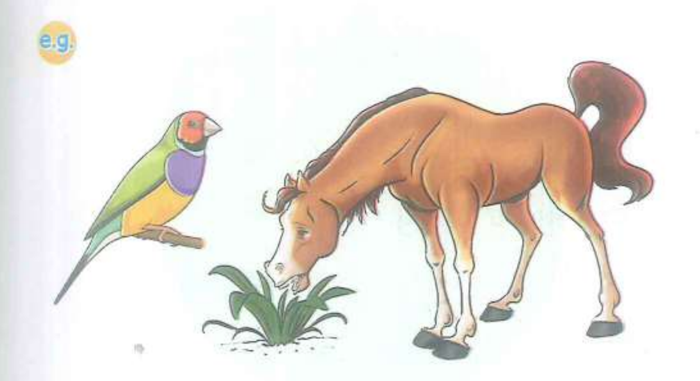
B) Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

عند المقارنة بين شيئين باستخدام الصفات الطويلة (ذات مقطعين أو أكثر) نضع "more" (أكثر) قبل الصفة ويضاف بعدها "than".

e.g. dangerous / colorful ....

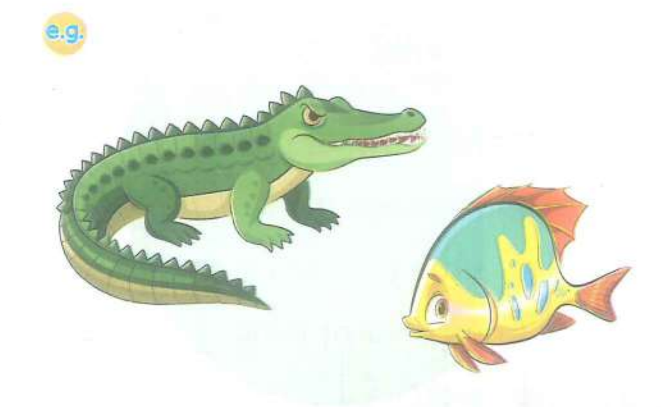
more + long adjective + than
الصفة الطويلة

e.g.



The bird is more colorful than the horse.

e.g.



The crocodile is more dangerous than the fish.



بعض الصفات تتغير عند استخدامها فى المقارنة.

e.g. good → better than

Fruits are better than burger.

e.g. bad → worse than

Spending much time playing video games is worse than playing sports.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Ice cream is (more delicious – delicious – a delicious – the delicious) than cakes.
2 Math is (most – many – more – the) difficult than English.
3 My mom is more careful (that – the – than – they) me.
4 He thinks history is (more – most – the – this) interesting than science.
5 You play tennis (better – good – most – best) than me.
6 I think my dress is (more – worse – most – bad) than yours.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Camels have flat ....

a) teeth b) legs c) feet d) humps

2 I saw a/an .... movie with my family. I liked it.

a) bad b) boring c) amazing d) heavy

3 We use .... to make clothes.

a) fur b) eyes c) humps d) hair

4 Mom made a .... cake for my birthday.

a) strong b) special c) noisy d) angry

5 Camels carry things and people to cross the ....

a) sea b) lake c) river d) desert

6 We can get delicious .... from camels.

a) fur b) cake c) eggs d) milk

7 Camels close their noses and eyes to stop the .... from coming in.

a) air b) sand c) water d) light

8 Can you help me .... the street, please?

a) live b) carry c) stop d) cross

9 A: How .... is a horse? B: It is about 459 kg. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة الباجور التعليمية 2024

a) fast b) tall c) heavy d) long

10 Crocodiles are .... dangerous than fish. They have sharp teeth.
محافظة المنوفية – إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024

a) most b) the c) more d) that

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fresh – teeth – grass – play – animal

محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024

I like animals. My favorite ....(1)............ is the horse. I like riding on their backs. Horses have strong ....(2)............ . They have large, beautiful eyes. They like to eat ....(3)............ . They drink ....(4)............ water.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Horses are .... (most) beautiful than fennec foxes.

2 The school is bigger .... (then) the house.

3 I think the cat is .... (nice) than the dog. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الزيتون التعليمية 2024

4 Ola's dress is .... (most) colorful than my dress.

5 Nadia is more active .... (that) Heba.

6 Marwa thinks that fennec foxes are .... (cute) than crocodiles.

7 A crocodile is .... (big) than a dog. محافظة الإسكندرية – إدارة غرب 2024

8 Cars are .... (most) expensive than bikes.

9 The tiger is .... (fast) than all other animals.

10 Camels live .... (long) than horses.

4 Punctuate the following:

1 camels are more beautiful than horses محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الزيتون التعليمية 2024

....

2 What s in a camel's hump

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

"The camel is my favorite animal"

- Where does the camel live?
- Is the camel strong and beautiful?
- How can camels help people?

محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة أجا التعليمية 2024

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A Story



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



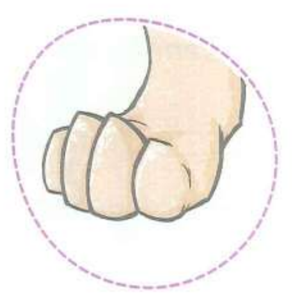
Main vocabulary



pelican
بجعة



bear
دب



paw
قدم الحيوان



claws
مخالب

Extra vocabulary

river	نهر	hungry (adj.)	جائع	both	كلاهما
juicy (adj.)	كثير العصارة	beak	منقار	surprised (adj.)	متفاجئ
angry (adj.)	غاضب	teeth	أسنان	scared (adj.)	خائف
sadly	بحزن	stronger (adj.)	أقوى	kinder (adj.)	أكثر عطفًا
fun	مرح	interesting (adj.)	شيق / مثير	boring (adj.)	ممل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
open	يفتح	opened	reach	يصل	reached
ask	يسأل	asked	lift	يرفع	lifted

Irregular verbs أفعـال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took	feel	يشعر	felt
see	يرى	saw	say	يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

out of the water	خارج الماء	ready to	جاهز لـ	look at	ينظر إلى
reach for	يصل إلى	look scared	يبدو خائفًا	feel hungry	يشعر بالجوع

The Pelican and the Bear البجعة والدب



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

1 A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear. "Excuse me" the pelican says, "that's my fish."



بجعة ودب فى النهر. إنهما جائعان جدًّا. كلاهما ينظر إلى سمكة كبيرة وكثيرة العصارة. يصل الدب إلى السمكة. يرفع مخلبه. البجعة تفتح منقارها. إنها جاهزة لإخراج السمكة من الماء. يرى الدب البجعة. ترى البجعة الدب. قالت البجعة: «عفوًا، هذه سمكتى».

The middle

2 The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my claws. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish."The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it says sadly.

الدب مندهش وغاضب. "أيتها البجعة، انظرى إلى مخالبى. انظرى الآن إلى أسنانى. هذه هى سمكتى" البجعة تبدو خائفة، "أنا آسفة، أيها الدب"، تقولها بحزن.

The end

3 The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear looks at the pelican. "How do you feel, pelican?" he asks. "I feel hungry," says Pelican.
"I'm bigger and stronger than you," says Bear. "But I think you are hungrier than me. You can have the fish." "Thank you, Bear!" says Pelican.
"You are kinder than all the other bears!"

الدب أقوى من البجعة، ينظر الدب إلى البجعة. يسأل: "ما هو شعورك أيتها البجعة؟". تقول البجعة: "أشعر بالجوع". يقول الدب: "أنا أكبر وأقوى منك". "لكننى أعتقد أنك أكثر جوعًا منى. أنت تستطيعين أخذ السمكة". "شكرًا لك، أيها الدب" تقول البجعة. "أنت ألطف من كل الدببة الأخرى".

The moral of the story

The strong should be kind to the weaker. يجب أن يكون القوى أكثر عطفًا مع الضعيف.

Check

Read the text and choose:

1 A pelican and a bear are in the (sea – lake – pond – river).

2 They are both looking at a big, juicy (meat – chicken – fish – fruit).

3 The bear is (shorter – stronger – smaller – thinner) than the pelican.

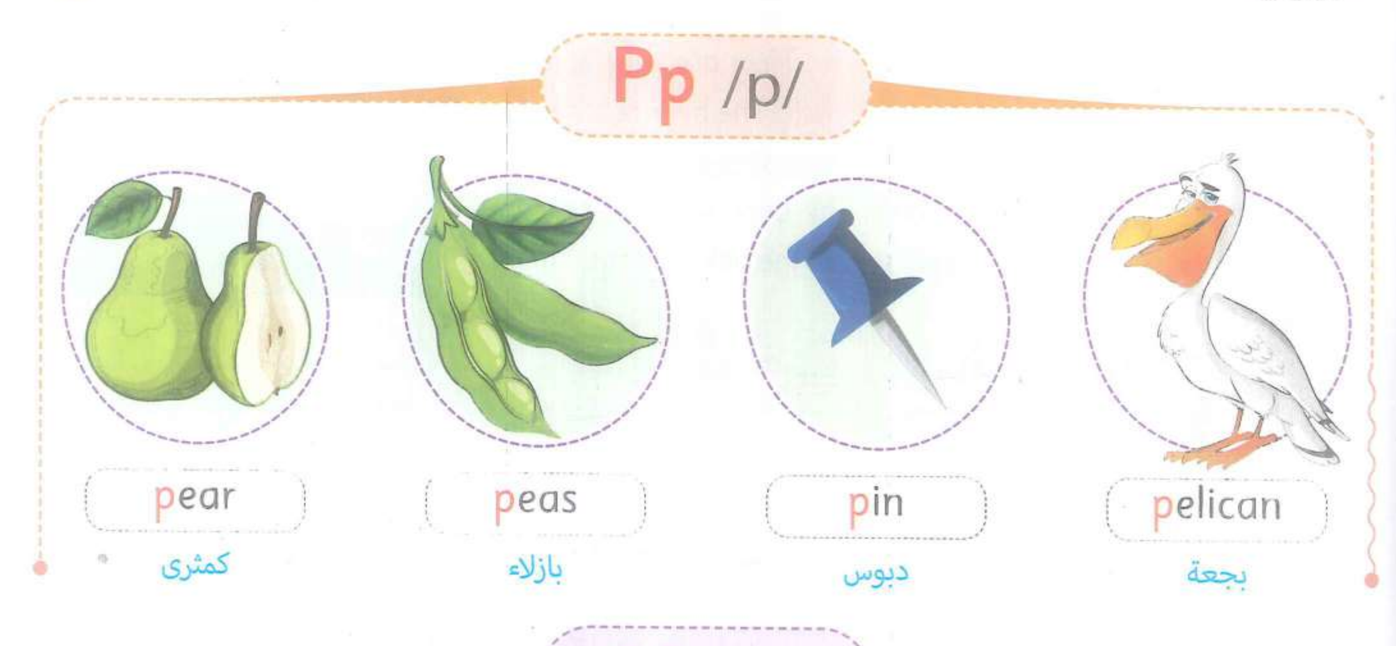




3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:







Check

Put the following words in the correct column:

bell – pen – book – parrot – picture – bat

/p/	/b/
....	....
....	....
....	....





4. Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

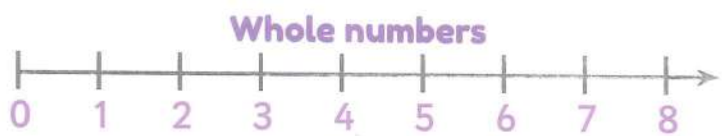
Whole numbers:

الأعداد الصحيحة:

They are the set of natural numbers starting from zero.

الأعداد الصحيحة هى مجموعة الأعداد الطبيعية التى تبدأ من الصفر.

Whole numbers



Fraction:

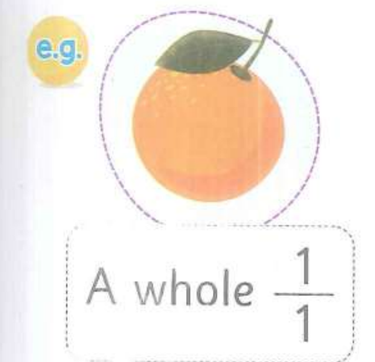
الكسر:

It is a number that describes a relationship between a part (represented by the numerator) and a whole (represented by the denominator).

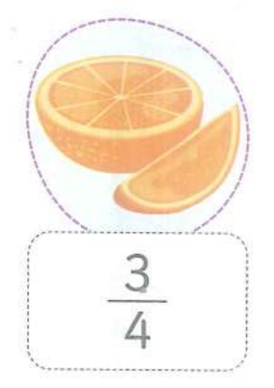
الكسر يوضح العلاقة بين الجزء (ممثلًا فى البسط) والكل (ممثلًا فى المقام).

Numerator → $\frac{3}{5}$ ← Denominator

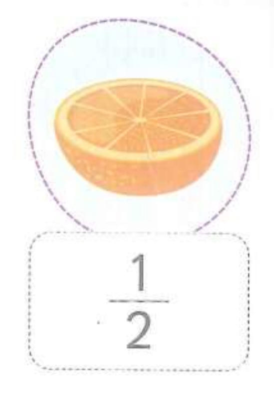
e.g.



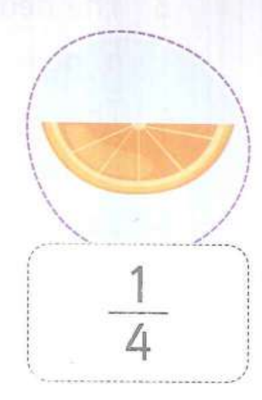
A whole $\frac{1}{1}$



$\frac{3}{4}$



$\frac{1}{2}$



$\frac{1}{4}$

Did you know?

We use fractions in everyday life. For example, here's a simple milkshake recipe: $\frac{1}{2}$ a glass of milk, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of banana, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of vanilla ice cream.

هل تعلم أننا نستخدم الكسور فى حياتنا اليومية. على سبيل المثال، لعمل وصفة مخفوق اللبن نستخدم $\frac{1}{٢}$ كوب من اللبن و $\frac{1}{٤}$ كوب قطع موز و $\frac{1}{٤}$ كوب من آيس كريم الفانليا.



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Yesterday, I read a story about a pelican and a ....
a) spider b) fish c) bear d) snake

2 The pelican and the bear were ....
a) angry b) strong c) hungry d) kind

3 They saw a big, juicy fish in the ....
a) river b) sea c) lake d) stream

4 The bear was stronger, but .... than all other bears.
a) hungrier b) angrier c) smaller d) kinder

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The .... is a large animal that has paws and sharp claws.
a) pelican b) bear c) pear d) fish

2 A: How do you ...., pelican? B: I am hungry.
a) watch b) feed c) feel d) fly

3 The bear lifted its .... to take the fish out of the water.
a) paw b) beak c) head d) ears

4 The .... is a big white bird that has a long beak.
a) fish b) bee c) pelican d) bear

5 The little girl is .... of the dark.
a) perfect b) strong c) hungry d) scared

6 The bear is bigger and .... than the pelican.
a) smaller b) stronger c) weaker d) thinner

7 The pelican uses its .... to catch fish.
a) beak b) paw c) hair d) neck

8 The pelican and the bear are in the .... They are looking at a big fish.
a) desert b) zoo c) park d) river

9 The .... is a bird. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة عين شمس 2024
a) pelican b) bear c) fox d) camel

10 A pelican has a .... to eat with.
a) wing b) tail c) beak d) paw

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

paw – looking – stronger – beak – water

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are ....(1).......... at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its ....(2).......... . The pelican opens its ....(3).......... . It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear is ....(4).......... than the pelican.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The pelican is a kind bird. It's very beautiful. It can fly away in the sky. It has white feathers, two wings, a beak, and a big mouth. It lives near the lakes and rivers. It likes to eat fish. The pelican opens its beak, then takes the fish out of the water in its big mouth. The pelican often eats fish and flies in small groups.

محافظة الجيزة – إدارة الدقى التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about the ....

a) bear b) pelican c) fish d) river

2 The pelican likes to eat ....

a) grass b) fish c) insects d) animals

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does a pelican live?

....

4 How does a pelican catch fish?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 where's my fish

....

2 i m bigger and stronger than you.

....



Lessons 4 & 5





Writing



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:





Main vocabulary



rhim gazelle
غزال الريم



horns
قرون



coat
فراء الحيوان



fennec fox
ثعلب الفنك

Extra vocabulary

The Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	leaves	أوراق الشجر	yellow-white (adj.)	أبيض مائل للاصفرار
North Africa	شمال إفريقيا	ears	آذان	insects	حشرات
mice	فئران	heat	حرارة	thick (adj.)	سميك

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
protect	يحمى	protected	weigh	يزن	weighed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hear	يسمع	heard	lose	يفقد	lost

Expressions and Phrases

look beautiful	يبدو جميلًا	walk around	يتجول	look for	يبحث عن
protect from	يحمى من	during the day	خلال النهار	keep (someone) warm	يبقى (شخص ما) دافئًا

Important sentences جمل هامة

Rhim gazelle	Fennec fox
* It lives in the Sahara Desert. تعيش فى الصحراء الكبرى. * It eats grass, leaves, and plants. تأكل العشب وأوراق الأشجار والنباتات. * It has big horns and a yellow-white coat. تمتلك قرونًا كبيرة وفراء أبيض يميل إلى الاصفرار.	* It lives in the deserts of North Africa. يعيش فى صحارى شمال إفريقيا. * It eats insects, lizards, and small mice. يأكل الحشرات والسحالى والفئران الصغيرة. * It has a really big ear. لديه أذن كبيرة جدًّا.

Take care!

قد تأتى الصفة مركبة (تتكون من كلمتين تفصل بينهم واصلة صغيرة).

e.g. yellow-white coat فراء أبيض مائل للاصفرار

e.g. dark-colored dress فستان غامق اللون





Animal Fact File ملف حقائق عن حيوان



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

تبدو غزلان الريم جميلة للغاية. إنها تعيش فى الصحراء الكبرى وتتجول بحثًا عن العشب، وأوراق الشجر والنباتات لتأكلها. لديها آذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة. كما تغطيها طبقات بيضاء مائلة للاصفرار تحميها من أشعة الشمس. لا تحتاج لشرب الكثير من الماء مثل الجمال.



How long is a rhim gazelle's horn? كم يبلغ طول قرن غزال الريم؟	20 - 30 cm 20 - 30 سم
How heavy is a rhim gazelle? كم يبلغ وزن غزال الريم؟	20 - 30 kg 20 - 30 كجم
How long does it live? كم المدة التى يعيشها؟	about 14 years حوالى 14 عامًا
What color is its coat? ما لون فراءها؟	yellow-white أبيض مائل للاصفرار

Check

1 Where do rhim gazelles live?

....

2 What do rhim gazelles eat?

....

3 How are rhim gazelles and camels similar?

....



B Project

The fennec fox

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 - 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big!
The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals.
The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice.



During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night, it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

يعيش ثعلب الفنك فى صحراء شمال إفريقيا. إنه أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى. يبلغ ارتفاعه حوالى ٢٠ سم. ووزنه حوالى كيلو جرام. طوله من ٣٠ - ٤٠ سم. أذنه كبيرة، كبيرة جدًّا!
يحتاج ثعلب الفنك إلى الأذن الكبيرة ليسمع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة.
يأكل ثعلب الفنك الحشرات، السحالى والفئران الصغيرة. فى خلال النهار يكون الجو حارًّا فى الصحراء. يفقد ثعلب الفنك الحرارة من أذنه. فى المساء يكون الجو باردًا، فرو ثعلب الفنك السميك يبقيه دافئًا.

Check

1 Where does the fennec fox live?

....

2 What does it eat?

SB

....

3 How does a fennec fox lose heat?

....



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The fennec fox has .... ears.

a) big b) small c) little d) tiny

2 The fennec fox has thick .... It helps the fennec fox stay warm.

محافظة المنوفية – إدارة تلا التعليمية 2024

a) beak b) fur c) feather d) skin

3 Rhim gazelles have long .... on their heads.

a) coats b) hats c) horns d) fur

4 The fennec .... is smaller than other foxes.

a) gazelle b) camel c) crocodile d) fox

5 Rhim gazelles eat grass, ..., and plants.

a) fish b) leaves c) mice d) insects

6 A: How .... is a fennec fox? B: It weighs around 1 kilogram.

a) heavy b) long c) tall d) old

7 The rhim gazelles' yellow-white .... protects them from the sun.

a) feet b) horns c) coat d) head

8 The .... eats insects, lizards, and small mice.

a) camel b) rhim gazelle c) pelican d) fennec fox

9 Both rhim gazelles and fennec fox live in the ....

a) rivers b) deserts c) mountains d) farms

10 The fennec fox loses .... from its ears when it is hot in the desert.

a) fur b) food c) water d) heat

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

heat – horns – insects – foxes – fur

محافظة أسيوط – إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other ....(1)............ . Its ears are big, really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear ....(2)............ and small animals. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses ....(3)............ from its ears. At night, it's cold. The fennec fox's thick ....(4)............ keeps it warm.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water. محافظة الفيوم - إدارة إطسا التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Rhim gazelles eat ....

a) meat b) leaves c) small animals d) insects

2 Rhim gazelles have .... horns.

a) short b) small c) long d) big

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where do rhim gazelles live?

....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

4 Punctuate the following:

1 how heavy is a rhim gazelle

....

2 The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North africa

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

"Rhim gazelles"

desert – beautiful – big ears

....

....

....

....

Unit 2 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

birds	طيور	lizards	سحالى
insects	حشرات	snake	ثعبان
fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك	crocodile	تمساح
spider	عنكبوت	camel	جمل
country	بلد	huge	ضخم
scary	مخيف	helpful	مفيد
dangerous	خطير	ugly	قبيح
small	صغير	cute	لطيف
important	هام	farmers	مزارعون

Lesson (2)

horse	حصان	amazing	مذهل
delicious	لذيذ	perfect	مثالى
flat	مسطح	feet	أقدام
large	كبير الحجم	noisy	مزعج
angry	غاضب	fur	فرو
strong	قوى	sand	رمال
fresh water	مياه عذبة	cross	يعبر
special	خاص	grass	حشائش
surprising	مدهش	carry	يحمل

Lesson (3)

pelican	بجعة	bear	دب
paw	قدم الحيوان	claw	مخلب
river	نهر	hungry	جائع
juicy	كثير العصارة	beak	منقار
surprised	مندهش	scared	خائف
stronger	أقوى	kinder	أكثر عطفًا
teeth	أسنان	sadly	بحزن
pear	كمثرى	peas	بازلاء
pin	دبوس	bee	نحلة
bird	طائر	lift	يرفع

Lessons (4 & 5)

rhim gazelle	غزال الريم	fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك
coat	فراء الحيوان	horn	قرون
The Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	grass	حشائش
leaves	أوراق شجر	insects	حشرات
mice	فئران	thick	سميك
heat	حرارة	yellow-white	أبيض مائل للاصفرار
North Africa	شمال إفريقيا	ears	آذان

Language Focus

Comparative adjectives

Comparative adjectives are words used to compare two things or people.

short adjectives

short adjective + er + than

e.g.

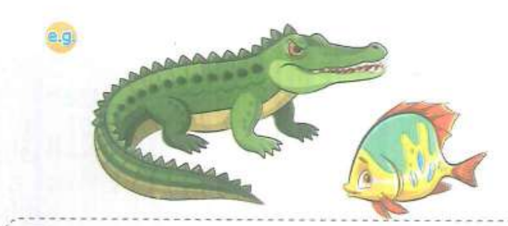


The mouse is smaller than the horse.

long adjectives

more + long adjective + than

e.g.



The crocodile is more dangerous than the fish.

Unit 2 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

ثعلب الفنك	....	طيور	....
ثعبان	....	تمساح	....
جمل	....	عنكبوت	....
قبيح	....	حشرات	....
مخيف	....	سحالى	....
بلد	....	ضخم	....
هام	....	لطيف	....
خطير	....	مفيد	....

Lesson 2

مثالى	....	كبير الحجم	....
كن حذرًا	....	لذيذ	....
غاضب	....	جميل	....
رمال	....	حصان	....
مسطح	....	مذهل	....
فرو	....	مزعج	....
مياه عذبة	....	حشائش	....

Lesson 3

بازلاء	....	نهر	....
بجعة	....	كمثرى	....
نحلة	....	دبوس	....
طائر	....	دب	....
مخلب	....	قدم الحيوان	....

Lessons 4 & 5

قرون	....	فراء الحيوان	....
آذان	....	أوراق الشجر	....
فئران	....	حرارة	....
غزال الريم	....	سميك	....

WRITING TIME



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about animals' comparison:

1. (الحيوان الأول) and (الحيوان الثانى) are (صفة مشتركة بينهم).
2. They help us + فائدة تقوم بها الحيوانات.
3. One animal is + short adjective + er + than ... (صفة يتفوق فيها).
4. One animal is + more + long adjective + than ... (صفة يتفوق فيها).

The camel and the horse

Camels and horses are perfect for the desert. They help us carry things and people to cross the desert. Camels are taller than horses. They are also slower than horses. They are noisier than horses and they can get angry. Horses are more beautiful than camels.

How to write about an animal:

1. (اسم الحيوان) lives in (مكان المعيشة).
2. (اسم الحيوان) is (صفات خاصة بالحيوان).
3. (اسم الحيوان) eats (طعام يتغذى عليه الحيوان).
4. (اسم الحيوان) + (صفة مميزة فى الحيوان).

The fennec fox

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. It's around 30 centimeters tall. It has really big ears. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small animals. It loses heat from its ears and its thick fur keeps it warm.

How to write an animal fact file:

أجب عن الأسئلة واستخدم المعلومات فى كتابة الفقرة.

Where does a rhim gazelle live?	the Sahara Desert
What does a rhim gazelle eat?	grass and leaves
What color is its coat?	yellow-white

Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun.

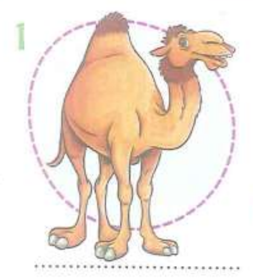


STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

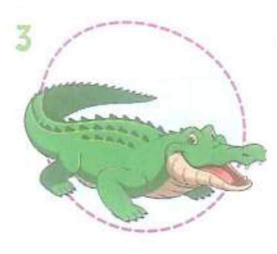


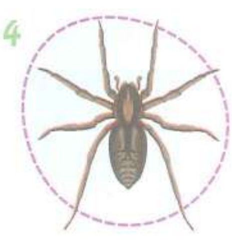
يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and write:

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....

5  ....

2 Complete the table:

tall	taller
....	heavier
fast	....
....	bigger
beautiful	more ....
delicious	.... delicious
....	shorter

3 Write sentences to compare:

1 (snake / fox / dangerous)

A snake is more dangerous than a fox.

2 (elephant / hippo / big)

....

3 (horse / giraffe / tall)

....

4 (crocodile / fish / dangerous)

....

5 (camel / fennec fox / small)

....

6 (ice cream / butter / delicious)

....

Test Yourself 30

UNIT 2





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Rhim gazelles look very ....

a) ugly b) beautiful c) small d) big

2 Rhim gazelles walk around looking for .... and leaves to eat.

a) mice b) seeds c) grass d) insects

3 Rhim gazelles have big ears and long ....

a) feet b) necks c) legs d) horns

4 Rhim gazelles have .... coats that protect them from the sun.

a) dark-colored b) yellow-white c) blue-gray d) black-white

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Horses eat .... and drink fresh water.

a) meat b) grass c) fish d) lizards

2 Birds and big animals use their .... to catch fish and smaller animals.

a) fur b) coats c) claws d) feet

3 The crocodile is huge and ....

a) cute b) small c) scary d) beautiful

4 The pelican opens its .... to take the fish out of the water.

a) eye b) ear c) paw d) beak

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

smaller – insects – helpful – desert – heat

The fennec fox is a small animal. It is ....(1)........... than other foxes. It lives in the ....(2)........... . Its ears are very big. Those big ears help the fennec fox hear ....(3)........... and small animals. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses ....(4)........... from its ears.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Camels are very helpful. They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. They can live without water for a long time. Camels have humps to store water and fats for when they need them. Horses can live up to thirty years, while camels can live up to forty years. Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. محافظة قنا - إدارة دشنا التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) camels b) horses c) rhim gazelle d) bears

2 The underlined word "humps" is a part of the camel's ....

a) back b) feet c) legs d) ears

B Answer the following questions:

3 How do camels help people? ....

4 How long can horses live? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Hana thinks cats are .... (cute) than dogs.

2 The monkey is .... (small) than the bear.

3 The lion is .... (dangerous) than the giraffe.

4 Red dresses are .... (beautiful) than black dresses.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1

does a fennec fox live in egypt? محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة العجمى التعليمية 2024

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

"Rhim gazelle"

Where does it live?	the Sahara Desert
What color is its coat?	yellow-white

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

than – stronger – helpful – spiders

Ola : Which animal is ……………………, the crocodile or the giraffe?
Ramy : The crocodile is stronger …………………… the giraffe.
Ola : What do you think about ……………………?
Ramy : I think spiders are …………………… .

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 We use camel's (meat – milk – fur) to make clothes.
2 The snake is (thin – thinner – thinnest) than the crocodile.
3 Rhim gazelles have big ears and long (coats – horns – legs). (Mid-year Exams)
4 The fennec fox loses heat from its (fur – ears – feet).
5 Camels' feet are (large – larger – largest) than horses' feet.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 camels – Where – do – snakes – and – live?
……………………………………………………
2 ears – has – The – fox – big – fennec. (Mid-year Exams)
……………………………………………………
3 strong – A bear – claws – has.
……………………………………………………
4 thinner – elephants – are – Dogs – than. (Mid-year Exams)
……………………………………………………
5 eat – grass – gazelles – Rhim – plants – and.
……………………………………………………

OCTOBER REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر أكتوبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hossam likes to drink .... before he goes to bed.
a) rice b) potatoes c) chicken d) milk

2 I like playing tennis, ... I can't play it well. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة عين شمس 2024
a) because b) and c) so d) but

3 Mangoes, watermelons, and .... are my favorite fruits.
a) onions b) grapes c) chicken d) potatoes

4 We use .... to make sugar. محافظة البحيرة – إدارة المحمودية 2024
a) onions b) watermelon c) sugarcane d) grapes

5 Farmers in Egypt .... animals like sheep and goats.
a) grow b) raise c) plant d) make

6 We have .... in the morning. محافظة بورسعيد 2024
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) supper

7 Damietta is .... for Domiati cheese. محافظة الجيزة – إدارة الدقى التعليمية 2024
a) cold b) famous c) hot d) late

8 The land in Damietta is rich in ....
a) games b) animals c) fish d) nutrients

9 .... catch a lot of fish in the sea. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الزيتون 2024
a) Fishermen b) Postmen c) Doctors d) Teachers

10 Be careful! Camels are very noisy .... they can get angry.
a) so b) but c) and d) or

11 .... are scary, but they are helpful because they eat insects.
a) Camels b) Crocodiles c) Spiders d) Rhim gazelles

12 It's very .... in the desert. محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة المطرية 2024
a) tall b) hot c) long d) slow

13 Big animals like .... control the number of small animals when they eat them.
a) spiders b) birds c) lizards d) crocodiles

14 Camels can live without .... for a long time. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة شبين الكوم 2024
a) clothes b) water c) fur d) feet

15 Rhim gazelles have long .... on its heads.
a) horns b) coats c) eyes d) feet

16 A .... is a bird. محافظة القليوبية – إدارة بنها التعليمية 2024
a) pelican b) bear c) fox d) camel

17 Some animals look scary, but they are all ....

a) useless b) cute c) important d) small

18 The fennec fox has thick .... محافظة القليوبية – إدارة الخانكة التعليمية 2024

a) far b) fur c) for d) fat

19 We can use .... fur to make clothes.

a) horses' b) snakes' c) birds' d) camels'

20 The pelican opens its .... to eat the fish. محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة شرق المنصورة التعليمية 2024

a) fur b) beak c) horn d) claw

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cheese – fishermen – rich – sheep – wheat

Ola lives in an Egyptian governorate called Damietta. The land in Damietta is ....(1).......... in nutrients. Ola's father is a farmer. He grows crops like rice, ...(2).........., lemons, and grapes. He also raises animals like ....(3).........., cows, and goats. Ola's mom makes delicious Domiati ....(4).......... . Life is good in Damietta.

raise – shoot – produce – grow – food محافظة الإسكندرية – إدارة الجمرك التعليمية 2024

Egyptian farmers are clever. Lots of the ....(1).......... we eat every day comes from our country. Farmers ....(2).......... rice, potatoes, and tomatoes in Egypt. Egyptian farmers ....(3)........ chickens, sheep, cows, and many other animals. Farmers ....(4)........ many things that we can buy from the shops or the supermarkets. Egypt is our great country.

heat – feet – smaller – lizards – insects

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is ....(1)........ than other foxes. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear ....(2)........ and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, ...(3)........, and small mice. During the day, when it's hot in the desert, the fennec fox loses ....(4)........ from its ears.

control – important – grow – dangerous – crocodiles محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ههيا التعليمية 2024

Our teacher always says there are lots of animals in Egypt. Sometimes, we think some animals are ....(1).......... or scary, but they are all ....(2)........ . Big scary animals like snakes or ....(3)........ have an important job to do. They ....(4)........ the number of small animals, birds, and insects.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Mona has red balloons .... (but) cupcakes for her birthday.
2 The cake looked delicious, ... (and) it didn't taste good.
3 They plant flowers in the garden .... (but) they water them every day.
4 Huda studied very well, ... (and) she didn't pass the exam.
5 Moaz likes reading, ... (and) he doesn't like reading comic books.
6 I eat fruit .... (so) exercise. محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة بلقاس التعليمية 2024
7 I like burgers, ... (and) I only eat one a week. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة دار السلام التعليمية 2024
8 I like playing tennis, ... (and) I can't play it well. محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة ميت غمر التعليمية 2024
9 Elephants are .... (big) than dogs. محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة شربين 2024
10 I like bananas .... (but) apples. محافظة دمياط – إدارة الروضة 2024
11 Horses are usually .... (quiet) than camels.
12 Fruits are .... (healthy) than candies.
13 Trains are .... (fast) than bikes.
14 My brother is two years .... (young) than me.
15 Sami is .... (tall) than his sister. محافظة البحيرة – إدارة إيتاى البارود التعليمية 2024
16 The bear is .... (strong) than the pelican. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024
17 Camels are bigger .... (then) fennec foxes. محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024
18 Crocodiles are .... (dangerous) than fish. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024
19 A: How .... (long) is a horse? B: It's 400 kg. محافظة الجيزة 2024
20 The horse is .... (short) than a camel. محافظة الشرقية – إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024

4 Punctuate the following:

1 I think we raise chickens in egypt

....

2 let s eat!

....

3 What do farmers grow in damietta محافظة بورسعيد 2024

....

4 look at the crocodile, it s huge!

....

5 snakes are scary animals محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة ميت غمر التعليمية 2024

....

6 rhim gazelles live in the sahara Desert.

....

لمزيد من التدريبات اذهب إلى صفحة 218.

Unit 3

Why do we grow plants?

لماذا نزرع النباتات؟



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
- listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.
- يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن النباتات وكيف يمكنها مساعدتنا.
- practice making sentences with the superlative.
- يتدرب على تكوين جمل باستخدام صيغة التفضيل.
- read, listen to, and understand a short story.
- يقرأ، يستمع إلى قصة قصيرة ويفهمها.
- learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.
- يتعلم وينطق كلمات تحتوى على الحروف الساكنة المدمجة الـ /sl/ و /sw/.
- write the life cycle of a sunflower.
- يكتب دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.
- research and write a short report.
- يبحث ويكتب تقريرًا قصيرًا.

Did you know?

- We eat *cacao seed. Chocolate comes from this plant.

Find out!

- There are many kinds of seeds that we can eat. These seeds are like *oats, *pumpkin seeds, sunflower seeds, and sesame seeds.

*cacao	نبات الكاكاو	*oats	الشوفان	*pumpkin	نبات اليقطين



Lesson 1
Plants and Seeds
نباتات وبذور

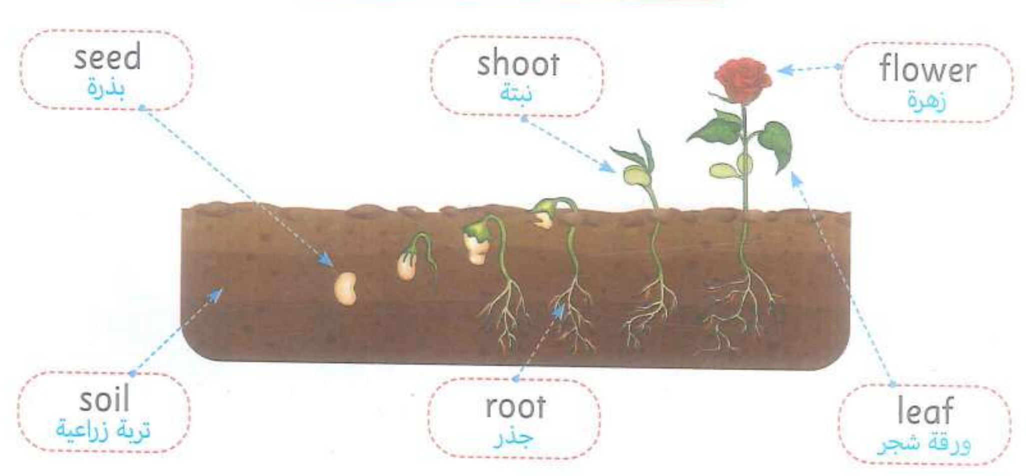




1. Listen, point, and say:
استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



Extra vocabulary

plant	نبات	balcony	شرفة (بلكونة)	leaves	أوراق النبات
new (adj.)	جديد	inside	بالداخل	germination	عملية الإنبات
tomato fruits	ثمار الطماطم	awesome (adj.)	رائع	lunch	وجبة الغذاء
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	above	فوق	finally	وأخيرًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
look	ينظر	looked	die	يموت	died
plant	يزرع	planted	talk	يتكلم	talked
water	يروى	watered	want	يريد	wanted

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتى	came	take	يأخذ	took
grow	ينمو	grew	become	يصبح	became
see	يرى	saw	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

Come and look!	تعال وانظر!	on the balcony	فى الشرفة	that is called	هذا يسمى
under the soil	تحت التربة	That's awesome!	إنه أمر رائع!	Let's + (inf.)	هيا بنا

Take care!

- هناك بعض الكلمات من الممكن أن تستخدم كاسم أو فعل مثل (water) و (plant):

Word	Noun (اسم)	Verb (فعل)
water	I drink a lot of water. أنا أشرب الكثير من الماء.	Ahmed waters the plant every day. يروى أحمد النباتات كل يوم.
plant	Plants give us oxygen. تمدنا النباتات بالأكسجين.	We plant a seed and it grows. نحن نزرع بذرة وهى تنمو.

- لتكوين صيغة الجمع لاسم مفرد، نضيف:

e.g. a flower → flowers	"s" مع معظم الأسماء.
e.g. a tomato → tomatoes	«es» مع الأسماء المنتهية بـ «x, o, ch, sh, ss».
e.g. a balcony → balconies	"ies" مع الأسماء المنتهية بـ (حرف ساكن + y).
e.g. a leaf → leaves a wife → wifves	"ves" مع الأسماء المنتهية بـ (fe/ f).

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Tomatoes are green before they are red. الطماطم تكون خضراء قبل أن تكون حمراء.
* Tomatoes have seeds inside. الطماطم بها بذور من الداخل.
* We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. يمكننا أخذ البذور لنزرع طماطم جديدة.
* The roots grow under the soil. تنمو الجذور أسفل التربة.
* The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. ينمو النبات أزهارًا وتصبح الأزهار ثمار الطماطم.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 We need (fruits – leaves – soil – balcony) and water to grow plants.
2 To grow a plant, you need to put a (leave – seed – shoot – root) in the soil.
3 I (play – eat – sleep – water) the plant every day, and it grows flowers.
4 I have a big (seed – root – soil – balcony) in my house.
5 We (plant – come – take – become) a seed, and it grows.
6 Plants need (sunlight – cake – tomato – balcony) to grow.



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Dad
Come and look!
تعال وانظر!



Seleem
What is it, Dad?
ما هذا يا أبي؟



Dad
Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers?
تنمو نباتات الطماطم الخاصة بنا في الشرفة (البلكونة)! انظر هل تستطيع أن ترى الأوراق والأزهار؟



Seleem
Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green?
أوه! نعم ، لكن لماذا حبات الطماطم خضراء؟



Dad
Tomatoes are green before they are red.
تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تصبح حمراء.



Seleem
How do we grow new tomatoes?
كيف نزرع طماطم جديدة؟



Dad
Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.
الطماطم لها بذور بالداخل. يمكن أن نأخذ البذور ونزرع طماطم جديدة! نحن نزرع البذرة والنبات ينمو. تلك العملية تسمى بعملية الإنبات. نحن نروى النبات كل يوم فتنمو الجذور تحت التربة. النبات ينبت زهورًا، والزهور تصبح ثمار طماطم.



Seleem
That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch!
هذا رائع! وأنا وجدت ثمرة طماطم حمراء! هيا نتناولها على الغداء!

Germination process عملية الإنبات

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs *sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

نضع بذرة في التربة. تحتاج البذرة إلى * ضوء الشمس والماء حتى تنمو. البذور تنمو جذور تحت التربة. ثم تصبح نبتة وتنمو النبتة أطول فوق التربة. أخيرًا، ينمو النبات بالكامل ويصبح لديه الأوراق والزهور.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Today, I read about the .... process.
a) recycling b) farming c) germination d) writing

2 We put a seed in the ....
a) pot b) soil c) water d) balcony

3 The seed grows .... under the soil.
a) tomatoes b) fruits c) flowers d) roots

4 Finally, the plant grows .... and fruits.
a) flowers b) roots c) shoots d) seeds

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The .... is the part of the plant that grows taller above the soil.
a) seed b) root c) shoot d) fruit

2 Tomatoes have seeds ....
a) upside b) inside c) outside d) beside

3 Tomato seeds grow .... under the soil.
a) shoots b) fruits c) flowers d) roots

4 .... grow under the soil. محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين 2024
a) Leaves b) Flowers c) Roots d) Shoots

5 Tomatoes are .... before they are red. البحيرة- بندر دمنهور 2024
a) red b) blue c) white d) green

6 We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called ....
a) reading b) germination c) transportation d) invitation

7 You need to wait for the tomato .... to be fruits to eat them.
a) shoots b) leaves c) flowers d) seeds

8 When the shoot grows taller above the soil, it usually has green ....
a) soil b) seeds c) roots d) leaves

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

water – flowers – soil – roots – shoot

محافظة القاهرة – إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

We put a seed in the ....(1).......... . The seed needs sunlight and ....(2).......... so it can grow. The seed grows ....(3).......... under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

We plant tomatoes on the balcony. We are happy to see the plants grow. They have fruits and flowers. Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed under the soil, and the plant grows. That is called the germination process. Our science teacher says plants need sunlight and water so that they can grow.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) farm b) science c) soil d) germination

2 Plants need .... and water to grow.

a) flowers b) sunlight c) science d) fruits

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do tomatoes have inside?

....

4 What is the germination process?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

that's awesome! I found a red tomato

محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة بلقيس التعليمية 2024

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Tomatoes"

بنها – 2024

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

seed – roots – soil

....
....
....
....
....



Lesson 2





1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:





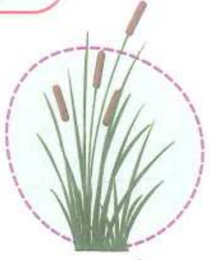
Plants in Egypt نباتات فى مصر

Main vocabulary

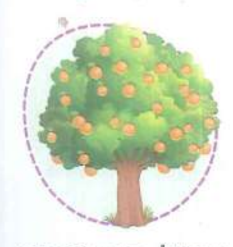

lotus flower
زهرة اللوتس


tamarisk
شجرة الطرفاء

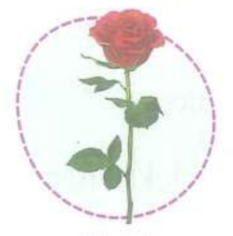

bean plant
نبات الفول


reed
القصب


acacia
شجرة الأكاسيا


orange tree
شجرة البرتقال


daisy
زهرة اللؤلؤ


rose
وردة


sunflower
زهرة عباد الشمس

Extra vocabulary

agricultural (adj.)	زراعى	habitat	موطن/بيئة	farmers	مزارعون
desert	صحراء	eggplant	باذنجان	maize	ذرة
beetle	خنفساء	butterfly	فراشة	around	حوال
delicious (adj.)	شهى	beautiful (adj.)	جميل	suitcase	حقيبة سفر

Expressions and Phrases

living things	الكائنات الحية	a lot of	كثير من	much rain	الكثير من المطر

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Farmers work in the agriculture habitat. يعمل المزارعون فى البيئة الزراعية.
* Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water. النباتات التى تنمو بالقرب من الأنهار والبحيرات تحتاج إلى الكثير من الماء.
* Plants that live in the desert don't need much water. النباتات التى تعيش فى الصحراء لا تحتاج إلى الكثير من الماء.



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ci) ينطقان (ʃə) (ش) كما فى كلمة (acacia).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (tu) ينطقان (tʃ) (تش) كما فى كلمة (agriculture).



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

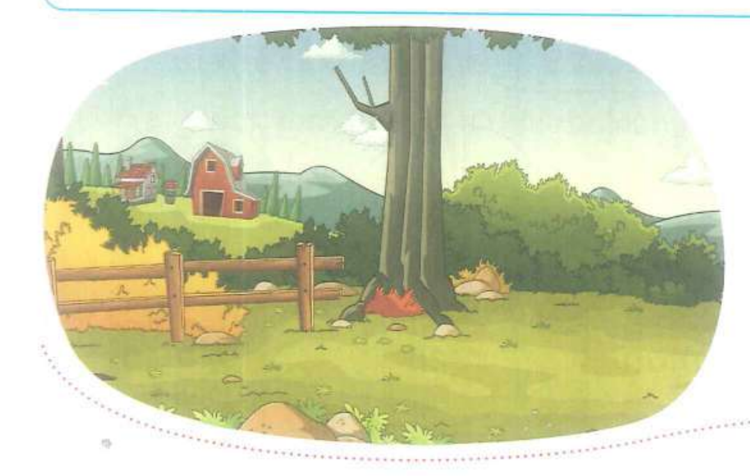
Plant habitats

بيئات النبات



A habitat: is a place where living things live and grow.

الموطن/ البيئة: هو المكان الذى تعيش وتنمو به الكائنات الحية.



Agricultural habitat

البيئة الزراعية

Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

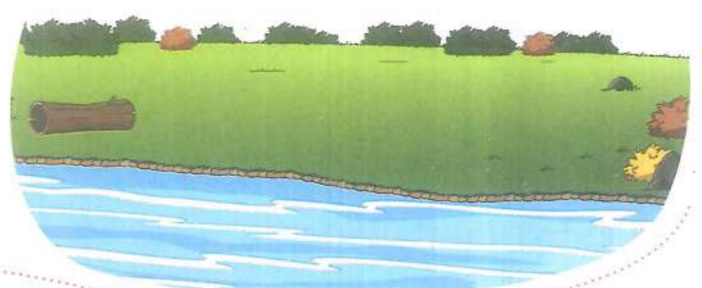
يعمل المزارعون هنا . فهم يقومون بزراعة الطعام من أجلنا لنأكله.

Rivers and lakes

الأنهار والبحيرات

Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

النباتات الموجودة بجانب الأنهار والبحيرات تحتاج إلى كمية كبيرة من الماء.





Desert habitat

البيئة الصحراوية

There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار هنا. النباتات التى تعيش ف الصحراء لا تحتاج إلى الكثير من الماء.

Check

1. Where do farmers work?

....

2. What do plants near rivers and lakes need?

....

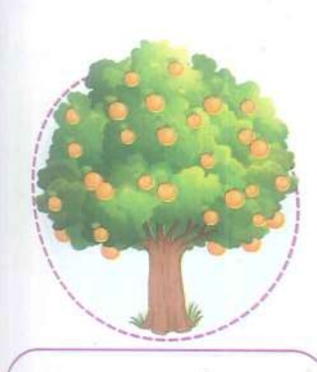
3. Is there much rain in the desert?

....

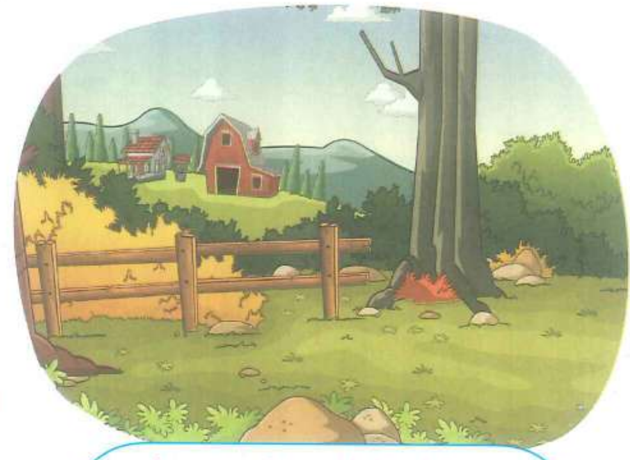


3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Where do these plants live? أين تعيش هذه النباتات؟



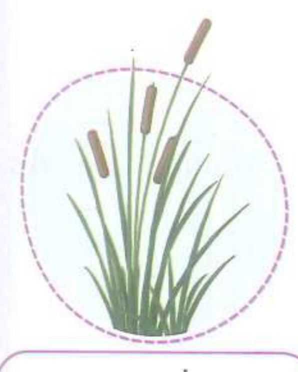
orange tree



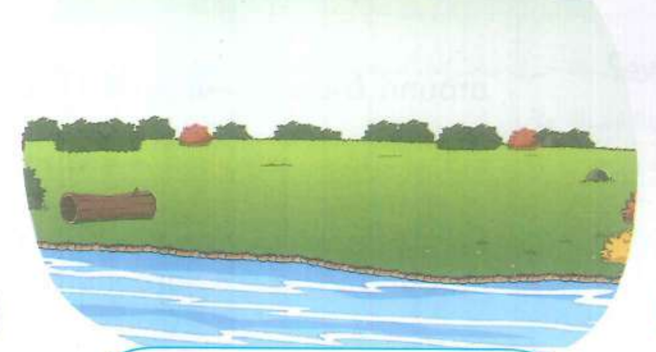


bean plant

Agricultural habitat
البيئة الزراعية



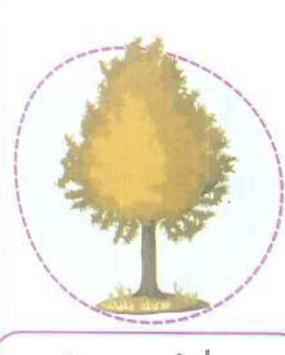
reed



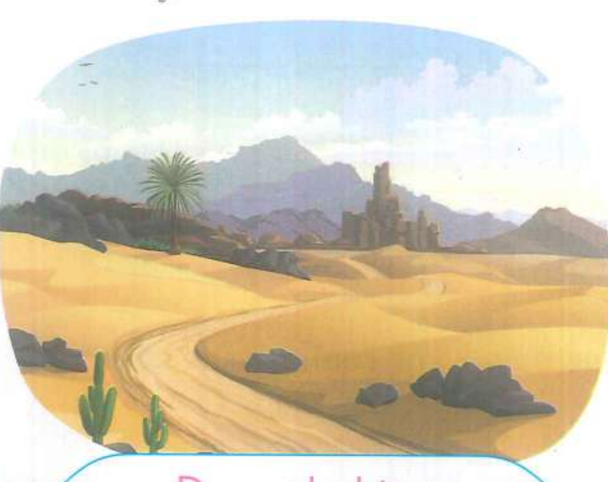


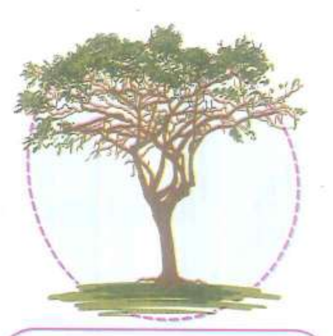
lotus flower

Rivers and lakes
الأنهار والبحيرات



tamarisk





acacia

Desert habitat
البيئة الصحراوية



4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Differences between flowers: الفروق بين الزهور

	daisy	rose	sunflower
How big is the flower? ما هو حجم الزهرة؟	2.5 – 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 – 15 cm
How tall is it? كم يبلغ طولها؟	10 cm	60 cm	1 – 3.5 m
How long does it live? كم المدة التى تعيشها الزهرة؟	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it? كم وزنها؟	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g



لاحظ الاختصارات:

cm = centimeter سنتيمتر   m = meter متر   g = gram جرام



Read and learn: اقرأ وتعلم:

The rose is taller than the daisy. The sunflower is taller than the rose. The sunflower is the tallest flower.

الوردة أطول من زهرة اللؤلؤ. زهرة عباد الشمس أطول من الوردة. زهرة عباد الشمس هى أطول زهرة.



Superlative adjectives are words used to compare three or more things.
صفات التفضيل هى الكلمات التى نستخدمها للمقارنة بين ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر.

A) Short adjectives:

- عند التفضيل بين ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر باستخدام الصفات القصيرة (ذات المقطع الواحد)، نضع "the" قبل الصفة القصيرة وتضاف بعدها "est".

the + short adjective + est
الصفة القصيرة

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (est):

fast → fastest / smart → smartest



e.g. The red car was the fastest car in the race.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (st):

safe → safest / nice → nicest



e.g. Nadia is the nicest girl in the classroom.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف (y) ويضاف لها (iest):

happy → happiest / heavy → heaviest



e.g. The sunflower is the heaviest flower.

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاعف الحرف الساكن ويضاف (est):

big → biggest / hot → hottest



e.g. Yesterday was the hottest day ever.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

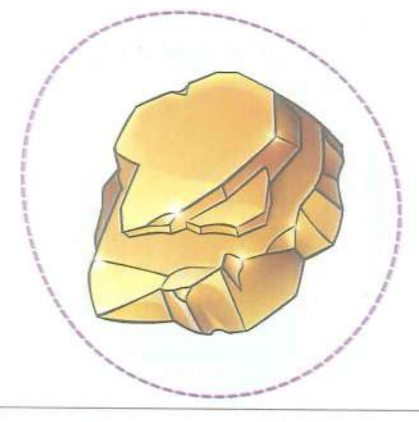
1 The elephant is the (large – largest – larger – a large) land animal.
2 Hossam was the (fast – faster – fastest – a fast) boy in the race.
3 The yellow snake was (the – that – than – they) thinnest one in the box.
4 Giraffes are the (tall – tallest – taller – a tall) animals.
5 Whales are the (heaviest – heavier – heavy – a heavier) sea animals.
6 The red rose is the (short – shorter – shortest – a short) flower in the garden.

B) Long adjectives:

عند التفضيل بين ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر باستخدام الصفات الطويلة (ذات مقطعين أو أكثر)، نستخدم "the + most" قبل الصفة الطويلة.

the + most + long adjective الصفة الطويلة





Gold is the most expensive metal.



Parrots are the most colorful birds.



بعض الصفات تتغير عند استخدامها فى التفضيل:

e.g. good → the best — Mohamed Salah is the best player.

e.g. bad → the worst — Watching too much TV is the worst.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. The black watch is the (most – as – less – more) expensive. It costs a lot of money.
2. The elephant is the (heavy – a heavy – heaviest – heavier) land animal on Earth.
3. Hesham is (that – the – than – this) most creative child in the competition.
4. Yesterday's boat trip was the (more – most – less – than) amazing trip.
5. Egypt is the (more – most – than – as) beautiful country in the world.
6. Science games are the (more – most – less – than) interesting games I ever played.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The giraffe is the .... (tall) animal. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الساحل 2024
2. The sunflower is the .... (bigger) flower. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة أشمون 2024
3. The lion is the .... (more) dangerous animal. محافظة دمياط – إدارة كفر سعد 2024
4. My city is the (nice) .... place to live. محافظة القليوبية – إدارة غرب شبرا التعليمية 2024



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A .... is the place where living things live and grow.

a) club b) house c) school d) habitat

2 Silver rings are expensive, but gold rings are the .... expensive rings.

a) more b) most c) less d) much

3 The daisy is the smallest flower and it lives the ....

a) short b) shortest c) shorter d) a short

4 Butterflies are the .... colorful insects.

a) more b) many c) most d) much

5 Bean plants are heavy, but orange trees are .... plants on the farm.

a) heavier b) heavy c) heaviest d) the heaviest

6 Acacia tree grows in .... habitat. It doesn't need a lot of water.

محافظة البحيرة – إدارة رشيد التعليمية 2024

a) rivers b) agricultural c) desert d) lakes

7 Farmers work in the .... habitat. They grow food for us to eat.

a) desert b) agricultural c) river d) lake

8 Lotus flower grows near the .... It needs a lot of water.

محافظة المنوفية – إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024

a) river b) rock c) desert d) home

9 Both bean plants and .... grow in the agricultural habitat.

a) reed b) acacia c) orange trees d) tamarisk

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rain – seed – rivers – desert – farmers

محافظة الإسماعيلية – إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية 2024

In the agricultural habitat, ...(1)............ grow food for us to eat. Plants near the ....(2)............ and lakes need a lot of water. Plants that live in the ....(3)............ don't need a lot of water. There is not much ....(4)............ in the desert, so we can find the acacia plant and tamarisk there.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The giraffes are the .... (tall) animals.
2. This is the .... (more) boring movie. I'll never watch it again.
3. Roses live longer than daisies. But sunflowers live the .... (long).
4. Sunflowers are beautiful, but roses are the .... (more) beautiful flowers.
5. Ali is the .... (kind). He helps all his friends.
6. I think koshari is the .... (delicious) food.
7. The blue whale is the .... (big) animal.
8. History books are the .... (more) interesting books.
9. Noha is the .... (good) student in the class.
10. My brother thinks math is the .... (bad) subject.

4 Punctuate the following:

1. the sunflower is the heaviest flower

....

2. how long does it live

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

"The differences between flowers"

	daisy	rose	sunflower
How big is the flower?	2.5 – 5cm	about 6 cm	7.5 – 15 cm
How heavy is it?	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g
How tall is it?	10 cm	60 cm	1 – 3.5 m

....
....
....
....
....
....



Lesson 3





Story



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز	dry (adj.)	جاف	polluted air	هواء ملوث
rainwater	مياه الأمطار	a billion	مليار	proud (adj.)	فخور

Extra vocabulary

farm	مزرعة	the United States	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	land	أرض
no one	لا أحد	grandparents	أجداد	noise	ضوضاء
difficult (adj.)	صعب	millions	ملايين	a year	سنويًا
desert land	أرض صحراوية	farmland	أرض زراعية	boring (adj.)	ممل
interesting (adj.)	شيق	OK (adj.)	مقبول	liter	لتر
crops	محاصيل	weather	الطقس	money	نقود

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	use	يستخدم	used
decide	يقرر	decided	water	يروى	watered
work	يعمل	worked	need	يحتاج	needed

Irregular verbs أفعـال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
buy	يشترى	bought	make	يصنع	made
grow	يزرع	grew	think	يعتقد	thought
bring	يحضر	brought	have	يمتلك	had

Expressions and Phrases

want to + (inf.)	يريد أن	decide to + (inf.)	يقرر أن يفعل شيئًا
buy some land	يشترى قطعة أرض	at first	فى بداية الأمر
work hard	يعمل بجد	proud of + noun	فخور بشخص أو شىء ما
have a good life	يحيا حياة جيدة	make the land green	يجعل الأرض خضراء



Read and learn

* It is important to turn desert land into farmlands ....
- إنه من المهم أن نحول الصحراء إلى أراضٍ خضراء ...

* to get more crops
- لزيادة المحاصيل

* for better weather
- لتحسين حالة الطقس

* to get more money
- لنحصل على أموال أكثر

Lucas and His Farm لوكاس ومزرعته



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



1 Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very special farm. Forty years ago, the land was very dry. There were no farms. No one wanted to live there. Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the polluted air and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.

يعيش لوكاس فى مزرعة فى الولايات المتحدة. إنها مزرعة مميزة جدًّا. قبل أربعين عامًا، كانت الأرض جافة جدًّا. لم يكن هناك مزارع. لا أحد يريد العيش هناك. عاش أجداد لوكاس فى المدينة، لكنهم لم يحبوها. لم يحبوا الهواء الملوث والضوضاء. أرادوا أن يكون لديهم مزرعة. قرروا شراء قطعة أرض.

The middle

2 At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They needed about a billion liters of water a year. They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.

فى البداية، كانت الحياة صعبة للغاية. لقد عملوا بجد وقاموا بزرع ملايين البذور. استخدموا مياه الأمطار لسقى البذور. كانوا بحاجة إلى حوالى مليار لتر من الماء سنويًّا. لقد زرعوا الكثير من الفاكهة مثل البرتقال والليمون. لقد أحضروا الحيوانات إلى الأرض. لقد زرعوا الأشجار والزهور.

The end

3 Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

اليوم ، يعيش لوكاس فى المزرعة مع والدته ووالده. إنهم سعداء للغاية ويتمتعون بحياة جيدة. إنهم فخورون جدًّا بأجداد لوكاس. لقد استخدموا النباتات لجعل الأرض خضراء.

Check

1 Why did the grandparents want to have a farm?

....

2 How much water did they need to plant the seeds?

....

3 Why do you think Lucas likes the farm?



....





3. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million palm trees[1] across the country[2]. This means we need to plant billions of seeds.

تريد مصر أن تزرع أكثر من ١٠٠ مليون نخلة في البلد. هذا يعني أننا نحتاج إلى أن نزرع مليارات من البذور.

(1) أشجار النخيل

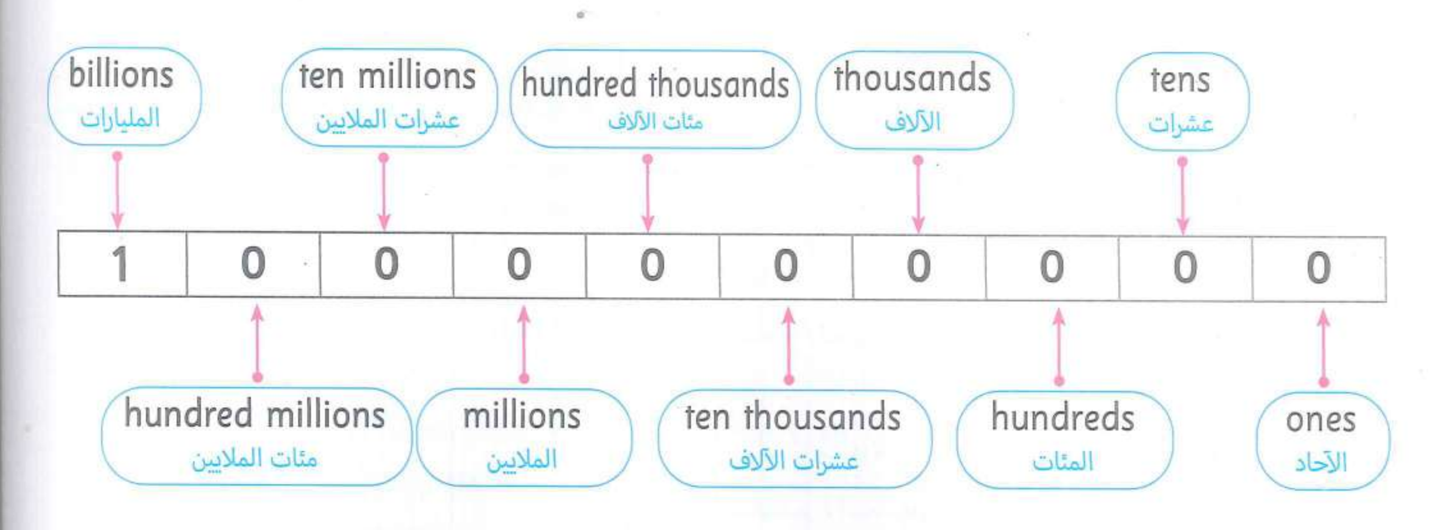
(2) دولة

• 1.000.000.000: A billion is a thousand million. المليار عبارة عن ألف مليون.



The value of numbers

قيمة الأرقام





C Pronunciation





4. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:

s+l /sl/

slice	slippers	sleep
شريحة	النعال	ينام

s+w /sw/

swim	swan	switch	sweets	sweep
يسبح (يعوم)	بجعة	مفتاح الكهرباء	حلوى	تكنس

The suffix "-ful"
اللاحقة "-ful"

We use the suffix "ful" at the end of many adjectives. It means "full of".

نستخدم المقطع "ful" في نهاية العديد من الصفات. إنه يعني "الكثير من".

Word	الكلمة	Adjective	الصفة
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
care	اهتمام / يعتني	careful	حريص
color	لون	colorful	ملون
help	يساعد / مساعدة	helpful	متعاون / مساعد
use	يستخدم / استخدام	useful	مفيد





Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Lama lives on a .... in Egypt.
a) farm b) village c) town d) city

2 Her parents plant lots of .... and fruits.
a) vegetables b) foods c) seeds d) plants

3 Lama doesn't like the ....
a) farm b) house c) city d) country

4 She doesn't like the .... air and the noise.
a) clean b) fresh c) clear d) polluted

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The air is polluted and it's noisy in the ....
a) farm b) city c) desert d) village

2 Lucas's grandparents used rainwater to .... the seeds.
a) buy b) bring c) water d) plant

3 A .... is a thousand million.
a) billion b) hundred c) thousand d) hundred million

4 Mona is always .... when she crosses the road.
a) beautiful b) careful c) colorful d) useful

5 Nour had two .... of cake.
a) slippers b) swans c) slices d) sweets

6 Use the .... to turn the lights on, please.
a) slice b) swan d) sweet d) switch

7 Nader helps his mother and .... the floor.
a) sleeps b) swims c) sweeps d) switch

8 Mom has a pair of blue .... She only wears them at home.
a) switches b) slippers c) sweets d) slices

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

desert land – green – rainwater – life – seeds

Today, Lara lives on a special farm with her mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good ....(1)............ . They plant millions of ....(2)............ to make the land green. They use billions of liters of ....(3)............ to plant the seeds. Lara knows it's important to turn the ....(4)............ into farmland because it helps them get more crops.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Adam's grandparents lived in the city. But they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used the rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to the land.

محافظة المنيا – إدارة المنيا التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Adam's grandparents lived in the ....

a) village b) city c) town d) desert

2 Adam's grandparents decided to buy some ....

a) land b) car c) house d) clothes

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did they use to water the seeds?

....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 My dad uses some .... (use) tools to fix his car.
2 Be .... (care) when you use the knife.
3 Marwa has a .... (beauty) pink dress.
4 Shady is .... (help) and kind to other people.
5 Parrots are .... (color) birds. You can see them at the zoo.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 Who is lucas

....

2 He lives on a farm in the united states.

....



Lessons 4 & 5





Writing



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

first	أولًا	next	التالى	after that	بعد ذلك
after	بعد	finally	فى النهاية	papyrus	نبات البردى

Extra vocabulary

life cycle	دورة حياة	sunlight	ضوء الشمس	process	عملية
report	تقرير	special (adj.)	خاص / مميز	famous (adj.)	مشهور
ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين	paper	ورق	sandal	صندل
basket	سلة	warm (adj.)	دافئ	weather	طقس
quickly	بسرعة	Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	near	بالقرب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
germinate	ينبت	germinated	face	يواجه	faced
start	يبدأ	started	die	يموت	died
open	يتفتح	opened	drop	يرمى (يلقى)	dropped

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
put	يضع	put	get	يصبح	got
begin	يبدأ	began	make	يصنع	made

Expressions and Phrases

get taller	يصبح أطول	use ... to make	يستخدم ...... لصنع
make ... from	يصنع ...... من	a class exhibition	معرض صفى



Important sentences جمل هامة — Sunflower life cycle

* First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. أولًا، أنت تزرع بذرة عباد الشمس فى التربة.
* Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil. ثم تنبت البذرة وتبدأ الجذور بالنمو تحت التربة.
* After that, the shoot grows above the soil. بعد ذلك، تنمو النبتة فوق التربة.
* Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. أخيرًا، تموت عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها .



The life cycle of a plant: دورة حياة نبات

2. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

I. The life cycle of a sunflower: دورة حياة نبات عباد الشمس

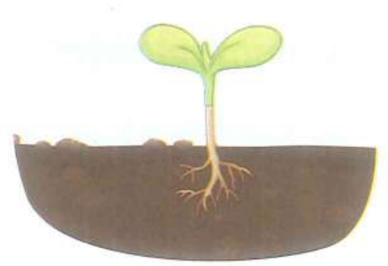
1



First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. Water the seed.

أولًا، ازرع بذرة عباد الشمس في التربة. أروى البذرة.

2



Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

ثم، تنبت البذرة وتبدأ جذورها بالنمو أسفل التربة.

3



After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.

بعد ذلك، تنمو النبتة فوق التربة. وتنمو أوراقًا. وتصبح أطول.

4



After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.

بعد حوالى ٤ أشهر، تتفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.

5



Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

في النهاية، تموت زهرة عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها وتبدأ العملية مرة أخرى.

Check

1 When does the sunflower open and face the sun?

....

2 What happens when the sunflower dies?

....

2. The life cycle of a tomato: دورة حياة الطماطم

1. First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You water it.
أولًا، تزرع بذور الطماطم فى التربة، ثم ترويها.



2. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
ثم، تنبت البذرة وتبدأ تنمو الجذور أسفل التربة.

3. After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows taller.
بعد ذلك، تنمو النبتة فوق التربة، وتصبح أطول.

4. After a few weeks, the plant grows leaves, flowers, and tomatoes.
بعد أسابيع قليلة، ينمو النبات أوراقًا وزهورًا وطماطم.

5. Finally, the tomato plant dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.
فى النهاية، يموت نبات الطماطم وتسقط بذورها وتبدأ العملية مرة أخرى.

Check

1. What do you need to do first to grow a tomato plant?
....
2. What happens to the tomato plant after a few weeks?
....



Find out! Farmers grow sunflowers to reduce pollution in the soil. Sunflowers produce lots of seeds that can be added to different types of bread.
يزرع المزارعون نبات عباد الشمس لتقليل التلوث فى التربة. ينتج عباد الشمس الكثير من البذور التى يمكن إضافتها لأنواع مختلفة من الخبز.





B Project

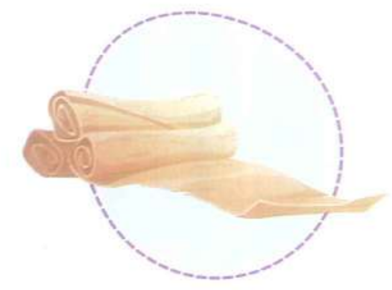


3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



papyrus
نبات البَرْدىّ





paper
ورق



sandals
صندل



basket
سلة

Papyrus نبات البَرْدىّ



Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

نبات البردى هو نبات مميز جدًّا. إنه مشهور بسبب أن المصريين القدماء استخدموه فى صناعة الورق. وصنعوا أيضًا صنادل وسلالًا من نبات البردى. يحتاج نبات البردى إلى الكثير من الماء وطقس دافئ لينمو سريعًا. إنه ينمو فى دلتا النيل بالقرب من النهر.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Papyrus is a very special plant. نبات البَرْدىّ هو نبات مميز جدًّا.
* Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. استخدمه المصريون القدماء فى صناعة الورق.
* Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. يحتاج نبات البَرْدىّ إلى الكثير من الماء و طقس دافئ لينمو سريعًا.
* It grows in the Nile Delta near the river. ينمو نبات البَرْدىّ فى دلتا النيل بالقرب من النهر.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make (beds – clothes – sandals – walls) and baskets.

2 (Tomato – Sunflower – Papyrus – Sandal) was famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.

3 Papyrus needs a lot of water and (hot – cold – warm – freezing) weather to grow quickly.

Practice



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 ...., you plant the sunflower seed in the soil.

a) First b) After that c) After d) Finally

2 When the seed ...., it grows roots under the soil.

a) opens b) germinates c) faces d) drops

3 You need to put the seed in the .... and water it to grow.

a) basket b) river c) sunlight d) roots

4 .... a few weeks, the plant grows leaves and flowers.

a) Next b) After c) Finally d) First

5 When the tomato plant dies, it .... its seeds.

a) grows b) plants c) germinates d) drops

6 After about 4 months, the .... opens and faces the sun.

a) shoot b) seed c) root d) sunflower

7 We need .... to grow plant. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024

a) seeds b) trees c) fruits d) flower

8 Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the .... القاهرة - العمرانية 2024

a) sea b) beach c) farm d) river

9 Ancient Egyptians used .... to make paper. ههيا - 2024

a) sunflowers b) papyrus c) reed d) rose

10 The sunflower opens and .... the sun. البحيرة - بندر دمنهور 2024

a) goes b) bakes c) faces d) closes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

warm – sandals – famous – river – mountain

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة هليوبولس التعليمية 2024

Papyrus is an Egyptian plant. It is a very special plant. It is ....(1)............ because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made ....(2)............ and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and ....(3)............ weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the ....(4)............ .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in ancient Egypt were growing plants near the river. They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the ancient Egyptians. It grew in the Nile Delta near the Nile River. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus plants to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It is a very special plant.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) lotus b) fruits c) rose d) papyrus

2 Papyrus needs a lot of .... to grow.

a) sand b) waves c) water d) paper

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did papyrus grow?

....

4 What did the Ancient Egyptians use papyrus to make?

....

4 Punctuate the following:

1 why do farmers grow sunflowers

....

2 Ancient egyptians used papyrus to make paper

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

"The life cycle of a sunflower"

First, – Next, – After that,

....

....

....

....

Unit 3 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

seed	بذرة	shoot	نبتة
flower	زهرة	soil	تربة
root	جذر	leaf	ورقة شجر
germination	عملية الإنبات	balcony	شرفة
new	جديد	inside	بالداخل
under	تحت	lunch	وجبة الغداء
tomato fruits	ثمار الطماطم	grow	ينمو
awesome	رائع	water	يروى / يسقى
plant	يزرع	become	يصبح

Lesson (2)

lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس	tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء
bean plant	نبات الفول	reed	القصب
acacia	شجرة الأكاسيا	orange tree	شجرة البرتقال
sunflower	عباد الشمس	rose	وردة
daisy	زهرة اللؤلؤ	habitat	موطن / بيئة
desert	صحراء	agricultural	زراعى
butterfly	فراشة	eggplant	باذنجان
maize	ذرة	beetle	خنفساء
lake	بحيرة	around	حوالى

Lesson (3)

farm	مزرعة	special	خاص/ مميز
dry	جاف	billion	مليار
polluted air	هواء ملوث	rainwater	مياه الأمطار
land	أرض	crops	محاصيل
liter	لتر	noise	ضوضاء
grandparents	أجداد	weather	طقس
slice	شريحة	slippers	النعال
sleep	ينام	swim	يسبح
swan	بجعة	switch	مفتاح الكهرباء
sweets	حلوى	sweep	يكنس

Lessons (4 & 5)

life cycle	دورة حياة	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
first	أولًا	next	التالى
after that	بعد ذلك	papyrus	نبات البردى
finally	فى النهاية	famous	مشهور
process	عملية	near	بالقرب من
germinate	ينبت	paper	ورق
Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	warm	دافئ
weather	طقس	sandals	صنادل
baskets	سلال	Egyptians	مصريون

Language Focus

Superlative adjectives

Superlative adjectives are words used when comparing three or more things.

short adjectives

The + short adjective + est



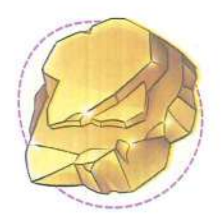


Nadia is the nicest girl in the classroom.

long adjectives

the + most + long adjective





Gold is the most expensive metal.

Unit 3 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

تربة للزراعة	....	جذور	....
زهرة	....	بذور	....
ورقة شجر	....	نبتة	....
شرفة	....	عملية الإنبات	....
ثمار الطماطم	....	وجبة الغداء	....

Lesson 2

زهرة اللوتس	....	شجرة الطرفاء	....
شجرة البرتقال	....	زهرة عباد الشمس	....
زهرة اللؤلؤ	....	نبات الفول	....
وردة	....	قصب	....
زراعى	....	موطن / بيئة	....
مزارعون	....	صحراء	....
خنفساء	....	فراشة	....

Lesson 3

حلوى	....	بجعة	....
يكنس	....	شريحة	....
ينام	....	يسبح (يعوم)	....
مفتاح الكهرباء	....	نعال	....
ضوضاء	....	مزرعة	....
هواء ملوث	....	أجداد	....

Lessons 4 & 5

ضوء الشمس	....	دورة حياة	....
التالى	....	أولًا	....
فى النهاية	....	بعد ذلك	....
مشهور	....	عملية	....
صنادل	....	نبات البردى	....
سلال	....	مشهور	....

WRITING TIME



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a plant habitat:

- There is the + (اسم البيئة) .....
- تحدث عما يميز هذه البيئة.
- تحدث عن أسماء النباتات التى تنمو وتعيش فى هذه البيئة.
- تحدث عما تحتاج إليه نباتات هذه البيئة لتنمو.

Different plant habitats

Plants can grow in different habitats. There is the desert habitat. There isn't much rain there. Acacia and tamarisk trees are plants that grow in the desert habitat. Plants that grow in the desert don't need much water to grow.

How to write about the life cycle of a plant:

- First, (الخطوة الأولى) .... .
- Next, (الخطوة الثانية) .... .
- After that, (الخطوة الثالثة) .... .
- After about 4 months, (الخطوة الرابعة) .... .
- Finally, (الخطوة الخامسة) .... .

The life cycle of a sunflower

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil, put it in sunlight, and water it. Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above the soil, it grows leaves. After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun. Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

How to write about papyrus plant:

1. What is papyrus?
2. Why is it famous?
3. What does it need to grow quickly?
4. Where does it grow?

Papyrus

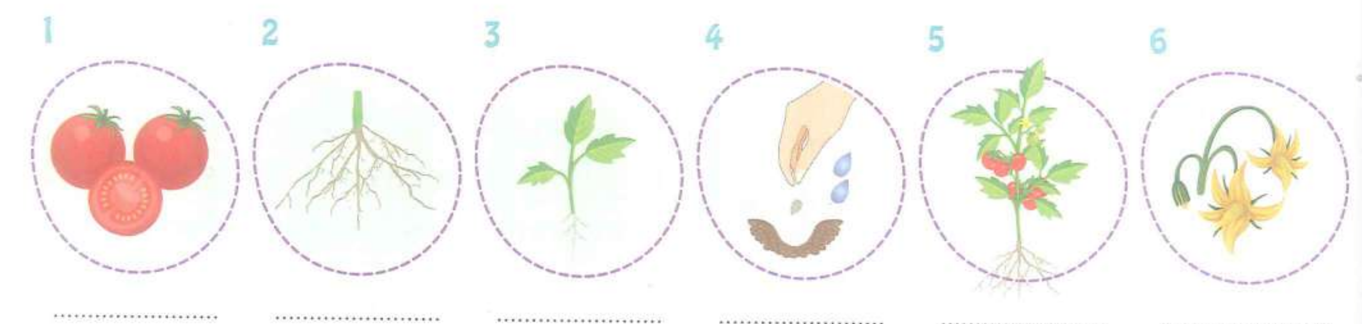
Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. It needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.




STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Do you remember the names for these parts of a plant? Look and write:



1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 ....

2 Look and make superlative sentences:

1 tall/ land animal/ giraffe
The giraffe is the tallest land animal.
2 heavy/ land animal/ elephant
....
3 nice/ I think/ Eman/ person
....
4 I think/ is/ delicious/ food/ koshari
....
5 big/ animal/ blue whale
....
6 I think/ is/ dangerous/ animal/ lion
....

3 Write sentences to compare these plants and animals:

1 (cat / snake / fox / scary)
....
2 (maize / bean / eggplant / delicious)
....
3 (grape / orange / lemon / big)
....
4 (bee / beetle / butterfly / beautiful)
....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Papyrus is a special ....

a) plant b) metal c) process d) tree

2 Ancient Egyptians used .... to make paper.

a) sandals b) baskets c) papyrus d) seeds

3 Papyrus needs a lot of .... and warm weather to grow.

a) sand b) water c) sunlight d) plants

4 Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the ....

a) river b) lake c) mountain d) rocks

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The plant needs water, soil, and .... to grow. البحيرة - بندر دمنهور 2024

a) fire b) salt c) sunlight d) sugar

2 When the seed germinates, it grows roots under the ....

a) soil b) shoot c) leaves d) fruits

3 Farmers work in the .... habitat. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024

a) desert b) agricultural c) lakes d) rivers

4 Tomatoes have .... inside. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2024

a) seeds b) beans c) roots d) flowers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

germination – flowers – seeds – roots – plant

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السيدة زينب التعليمية 2024

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the ....(1)............ and grow new tomatoes. We ....(2)............ a seed and the plant grows. This is called ....(3)............ . We water the plant every day and the ....(4)............ grow under the soil.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

My name is Ahmed. I'm in grade four. At school, our teacher told us how to grow grapes. First, you plant the grape seeds in the soil and water them every day. The plant needs water and sunlight to grow. After that, the seeds grow roots under the soil. Then, the shoot grows above the soil. Finally, the plant grows flowers and the flowers become grapes. My grapes are very delicious. محافظة القاهـرة - إدارة الشـروق التعليميـة 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about "Growing ....".
a) tomatoes b) sunflower c) grapes d) sugarcane

2 The underlined word "delicious" means ....
a) tasty b) awful c) bad d) ugly

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does the plant need to grow? ....

4 What do the flowers become? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Nadeen is the .... (tall) girl in her classroom.

2 Grandpa is the .... (old) in my family. محافظة - الإسماعلية 2024

3 Nadia has the .... (more) beautiful voice ever.

4 The elephant is the .... (bigger) land animal. الجيزة - الهرم 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

1

which plant is the tallest محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2024

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

مجاب عنه صفحة 286

"Papyrus"

- Why is papyrus a famous plant?
- What does it need to grow?

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 3 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

live – farm – noise – city

Omnia : Do you like living in the ....?
Alaa : No, I don't like the .... and the polluted air.
Omnia : Where would you like to ....?
Alaa : I'd like to live on a .... with my grandparents.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. We need (seeds – books – fruits) to grow a new plant.
2. Plants that live in the (agricultural – desert – lakes) habitat don't need a lot of water.
3. We (read – go – water) the plant every day.
4. My city is the (nice – nicest – nicer) place to live in.
5. The flower is the (most – more – as) colorful part of the plant.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. above – The – the – grows – soil – shoot.

....

2. plant – Papyrus – special – very – is – a.

....

3. made – They – from – sandals – papyrus.

....

4. It – the river – in – near – Nile Delta – the – grows.

....

5. planted – seeds – They – of – millions.

....

Theme 2

Myself and others

نفسى والآخرون



Unit 4

Where do you live?

أين تعيش؟

Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.
  - practice making sentences with prepositions.
  - read and listen to a short story.
  - learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/.
  - write a short article about his/her village or city.
  - research and make a poster.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن منازل وأماكن مختلفة فى المدينة.
  - يتدرب على تكوين الجمل باستخدام حروف الجر.
  - يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
  - يتعلم ويقول كلمات بأصوات الـ /f/ و /v/.
  - يكتب مقالة قصيرة عن قريته أو مدينته.
  - يبحث ويصمم ملصقًا.

Did you know?

- Canada has some very unusual houses. Some houses look like a *cube. Other houses are made of ice.

Find out!

- There are many *unusual houses in Egypt. In Siwa, there is the *pigeon house. There is also *Anakato Nubian Guest House in Aswan.

*cube	مكعب	*unusual	غير عادى	*pigeon	حمامة	*Anakato Nubian Guest House	فندق أناكاتو النوبى



Lesson 1

At home فى المنزل



Main vocabulary



1. Listen, point, and say:






kitchen
مطبخ


bedroom
غرفة النوم


bathroom
حمَّام


living room
غرفة المعيشة


dining room
غرفة الطعام


balcony
(شرفة/ بلكونة)


house
منزل


tent
خيمة


apartment
شقة


houseboat
منزل عائم

Extra vocabulary

lovely (adj.)	جميل	fantastic (adj.)	رائع	favorite (adj.)	مفضل
homework	واجب منزلى	quietly	بهدوء	whole (adj.)	كل
street	شارع	family	عائلة	friend	صديق
desert	صحراء	home	منزل	cloth	قماش
building	مبنى	grandparents	أجداد	outside	بالخارج
television	التليفزيون	shower	دش	dinner	وجبة العشاء



لاحظ استخدام (!) Exclamation mark علامة التعجب عند التعبير عن الإعجاب الشديد أو المشاعر القوية.



It's fantastic!

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present	Past	Present	Past
relax يسترخي	relaxed	talk يتحدث	talked
organize ينظم	organized	move ينتقل إلى	moved
cook يطبخ	cooked	live يعيش	lived

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
do يفعل/ يؤدى	did	sit يجلس	sat
can يستطيع	could	sleep ينام	slept

Expressions and Phrases

It's fantastic! إنها رائعة!	for me بالنسبة لى	That sounds good! فكرة جميلة!
Let's do it! لنفعلها!	take a shower يستحم	live on water يعيش على المياه
live in يعيش فى	made of مصنوع من	live with يعيش مع

Important sentences جمل هامة

* The new apartment is fantastic. الشقة الجديدة رائعة.
* Talia's favorite room is the bedroom. الغرفة المفضلة لدى تاليا هى غرفة النوم.
* Mom's favorite room is the living room. الغرفة المفضلة لدى أمى هى غرفة المعيشة.
* Talia helps her mom to organize the kitchen. تساعد تاليا أمها فى تنظيم المطبخ.

Take care!



e.g. bath + room = bathroom
house + boat = houseboat
bed + room = bedroom

الأسماء المركبة هى الأسماء التى يتم تشكيلها بإضافة (اسم + اسم).

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. I can see the whole street from the (balcony – bedroom – bathroom – kitchen).
2. In the desert, people live in (houseboats – balconies – apartments – tents).
3. I sleep in a big (bathroom – bedroom – living room – kitchen). It has two big beds.
4. I play computer games in the (kitchen – living room – bathroom – balcony) where there is a big TV.
5. Mom cooks food in the (bedroom – kitchen – bathroom – living room).
6. My friend lives on a (tent – houseboat – garden – balcony). She loves living on water.



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Mom

Look at our lovely new apartment!

انظرى إلى شقتنا الجديدة الجميلة!



Talia

It's fantastic!

إنها رائعة!



Mom

Which is your favorite room?

أى غرفة مفضلة لديكِ؟



Talia

For me, it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly.

بالنسبة لى، إنها غرفة نومى. يمكننى الاسترخاء وأداء واجبى بهدوء.



Mom

My favorite is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street! Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen?

المفضلة لدى هى غرفة المعيشة المتصلة بالشرفة (البلكونة). أستطيع أن أرى الشارع بأكمله! تاليا، هل يمكنك مساعدتى فى تنظيم المطبخ؟



Talia

That sounds good, let's do it!

فكرة جميلة، هيا بنا نفعل ذلك!

kitchen مطبخ	I cook food in this room. أنا أطبخ الطعام فى هذه الغرفة.
bedroom حجرة النوم	I sleep here. أنا أنام هنا.
living room حجرة المعيشة	I talk to my family and watch television in this room. أتحدث مع عائلتى وأشاهد التلفاز فى هذه الغرفة.
bathroom حمّام	I take a shower in this room. أنا أستحم فى هذه الغرفة.
balcony بلكونة	I love to sit here. I can see the people in the street. أنا أحب الجلوس هنا. أستطيع أن أرى الناس فى الشارع.
dining room حجرة الطعام	I eat dinner with my family here. أتناول العشاء مع عائلتى هنا.

Different houses منازل مختلفة



3. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

1



My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family.
They are very happy because they have a big balcony.
انتقلت عمتى إلى شقة جديدة مع عائلتها. إنهم سعداء للغاية لأن لديهم شرفة (بلكونة) كبيرة.

2



My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water.
صديقتى وعائلتها يعيشون فى منزل عائم. إنه صغير، ولكنها تحب العيش على الماء.

3



In the desert, some people live in a tent. This home is made of cloth.
فى الصحراء، بعض الناس يعيشون فى خيمة. هذا المنزل مصنوع من القماش.

4



I love living in a house because it is a big building.
My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.
أحب العيش فى منزل لأنه مبنى كبير. أجدادى يعيشون معنا. أستطيع اللعب فى الخارج مع أخى وأختى.

Check

1 Why are your aunt and her family happy?

....

2 What are tents made of?

....

3 What is the name of the house that moves on water?

....



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Hossam moved to a new .... last month.
a) house b) houseboat c) tent d) apartment

2 Hossam's favorite room is the ....
a) bedroom b) living room c) bathroom d) garden

3 He can .... and do homework quietly in the bedroom.
a) eat b) relax c) live d) play

4 They have a big ...., too.
a) TV b) balcony c) kitchen d) garden

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My aunt moved to a new .... last week. It's in a big building.
a) tent b) houseboat c) house d) room

2 You shouldn't play in the ....
a) club b) street c) garden d) park

3 A: Where is Anne? B: She's sleeping in the ....
a) bedroom b) bathroom c) balcony d) kitchen

4 .... are made of cloth.
a) Houseboats b) Tents c) Houses d) Apartments

5 The .... is the room where I eat dinner with my family.
a) garden b) bathroom c) dining room d) balcony

6 Omar likes watching television with his family in the ....
a) living room b) kitchen c) tent d) bathroom

7 Mom is making dinner in the ....
a) houseboat b) dining room c) kitchen d) balcony

8 He takes a shower in the ....
a) living room b) bedroom c) bathroom d) garden

9 Nour loves living on water. She lives on a/an ....
a) apartment b) house c) tent d) houseboat

10 You should .... your room by yourself.
a) eat b) sleep c) organize d) move

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

beds – garden – rooms – living room – house

بورسعيد 2024

My grandparents live in a big ....(1)............ . It's on the corner of the city. It has many rooms. There are two ....(2)............ in my bedroom. They have a big ....(3)............ with television and a couch. I love playing with my cousins in the ....(4)............ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Hazem. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and one bathroom. My mom cooks food in the kitchen. We watch television in the living room. My favorite room is the bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

محافظة السويس – إدارة المنطقة الشمالية التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hazem's father is a ....

a) teacher b) doctor c) farmer d) fisherman

2 The opposite of the underlined word "big" is ....

a) huge b) small c) enormous d) giant

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Hazem watch television?

....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 they have a big balcony

....

2 which is your favorite room

محافظة القاهرة – إدارة السيدة زينب التعليمية 2024

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

"My favorite room"

bedroom – relax – sleep

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2





Where is it? أين هو؟



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



school
مدرسة



supermarket
سوبر ماركت



shopping mall
مول تجارى



post office
مكتب بريد



office
مكتب



hospital
مستشفى

Extra vocabulary

village	قرية	the Nile	نهر النيل	the biggest (adj.)	الأكبر
plant	نبات	couch	أريكة (كنبة)	letters	خطابات
clothes	ملابس	shoes	حذاء	sick (adj.)	مريض
museum	متحف	park	حديقة	map	خريطة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	learn	يتعلم	learned

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

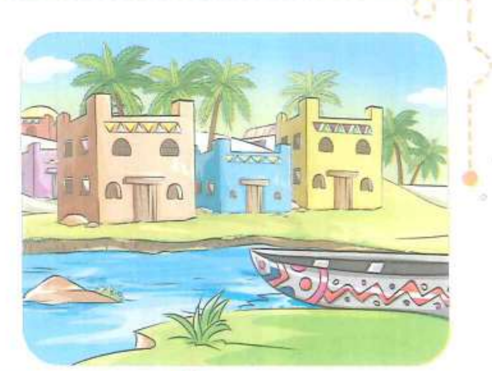
Present		Past	Present		Past
buy	يشترى	bought	send	يرسل	sent

Expressions and Phrases

next to the Nile	بجانب النيل	where I learn	حيث أتعلم



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



My name's Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.



اسمى زين. أعيش فى قرية بجانب النيل. أعيش فى منزل مع عائلتى. منزلنا ليس الأكبر فى القرية. إنه بين منزل لونه أصفر وآخر لونه بنى. توجد أشجار طويلة خلف المنزل.

school	a place where we learn	مكان حيث نتعلم
supermarket	a place where we buy food	مكان حيث نشترى الطعام
shopping mall	a place where we buy clothes and shoes	مكان حيث نشترى الملابس والأحذية
post office	a place where we send letters	مكان حيث نرسل الخطابات
office	a place where my mom and dad work	مكان حيث يعمل أبى وأمى
hospital	a place where we go when we are sick	مكان نذهب إليه عندما نمرض

Check

Choose the correct answer:

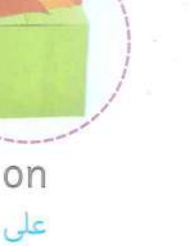
1. My sister goes to (school – shopping mall – post office – office) to learn.
2. Noha went to the (school – office – hospital – supermarket) when she was sick.
3. They went to the (supermarket – shopping mall – office – hospital) to buy some food.
4. Can you tell me where the (hospital – school – post office – office) is? I want to send a letter.
5. Ola works in a/an (hospital – park – supermarket – office). It has many desks and computers.
6. Nadia went to the (park – shopping mall – office – school) to buy some new clothes.



Language Focus

1. Prepositions of place:

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان:

on
على



in
فى/ داخل



under
تحت



above
فوق/ أعلى



next to
بجوار



between
بين



behind
خلف



in front of
أمام

Remember

2. Asking about places:

للسؤال عن المكان نستخدم:

Where + is + the place (المكان)?

e.g.



A: Where is the office?
B: It's in front of the park.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Fish live (on – in – behind – between) the water.
2. A: (What – Where – When – How) is the key? B: It's on the table.
3. My school is (next – behind – above – in front) of the shopping mall.
4. Ola's house is (between – next to – on – behind) the school and the city park.
5. Excuse me, (what – why – who – where) is the hospital?
6. The bridge is (in – under – above – next) the river.
7. Please put your phone (in – between – in front – on) the desk.
8. The pet is hiding (in front – between – next – behind) the door.
9. My house is (in front – above – on – next) to the Nile.
10. A: Can you see the pen? B: It's (next – between – under – in front) the book.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My book is .... the table. I can't see it. محافظة الإسماعيلية – إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية 2024
   a) next b) in front of c) behind d) above
2. There is a table .... the balcony.
   a) on b) in c) between d) next
3. The hospital is .... the shopping mall and the park.
   a) next b) in front c) on d) between
4. Sara went to the .... to send a letter.
   a) school b) hospital c) post office d) park
5. A: .... is the park? B: It's behind the office.
   a) When b) Why c) Where d) Who
6. A: Where can I send ....? B: In the post office.
   a) food b) clothes c) letters d) games
7. Excuse me! Where is the ....? I want to buy some food.
   a) school b) hospital c) supermarket d) shopping mall
8. My dad goes to the .... when he feels sick.
   a) post office b) hospital c) office d) supermarket
9. I can buy some new .... at the shopping mall.
   a) shoes b) houses c) tents d) letters
10. My children never go to .... on Friday. It's a holiday.
    a) supermarket b) hospital c) school d) shopping mall

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

play – school – place – supermarkets – buy

محافظة القاهرة 2024

I love my town. It is a good ....(1)............ to live in. It is small, but it has ....(2)............, offices, schools, and many other places. I walk to ....(3)............ every morning to learn. My school is next to the park. I ....(4)............ in the park with my friends.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

محافظة الجيزة – إدارة أبو النمرس التعليمية 2024

My name is Soha. I live in a small city. My city has stores, offices, a shopping mall, and a school. I go to school by bus. My school is next to the hospital. I go to the park to play tennis. I go to the supermarket to buy different foods and drinks. I love my city.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Soha's school is .... the hospital.
a) behind b) next to c) in front of d) between

2 Soha plays tennis in the ....
a) school b) park c) supermarket d) hospital

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Soha buy different foods and drinks?

....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The boat moves .... (in) the water.
2 Dad's office is .... (in front) to the post office.
3 Put your books .... (under) your bag, please.
4 The shopping mall is .... (next) of Mona's house.
5 A: .... (What) is the city bank, please? B: It's next to the park.
6 Look at the beautiful kite flying .... (under) the building.
7 The house is .... (next) the school and the supermarket.
8 Nadeen is hiding .... (in front of) the tree.
9 The cat is .... (on) the table. I can't see it.
10 There are ten apples .... (in front) the fruit basket.

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

"Places in my town"

school – a supermarket – near

....
....
....
....



Lesson 3





A Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



Go straight ahead.
اتجه للأمام مباشرة.



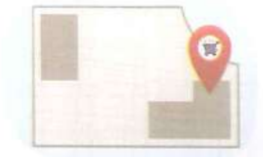
Turn left.
انعطف يسارًا.



Turn right.
انعطف يمينًا.



Take the second right.
خُذ المنعطف الثانى على اليمين.



It's on the corner.
إنه فى الزاوية (ملتقى شارعين).

Extra vocabulary

happy (adj.)	سعيد	today	اليوم
directions	اتجاهات	street	شارع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited	turn	ينعطف	turned

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	take	يأخذ	took

Expressions and Phrases

take the second left	خذ المنعطف الثانى جهة اليسار	Excuse me, ...	معذرة
Here are some directions	إليك بعض الاتجاهات	the corner of	من ناصية / من تقاطع
See you soon!	أراك لاحقًا!	on the left	على الشمال

Take care!

- عندما نقوم بوصف الاتجاهات، نستخدم صيغة الأمر "The imperative"

e.g. Go straight ahead. – Turn left.



Listening script page 60 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Excuse me, where's the post office?

معذرة، أين مكتب البريد؟



Go straight ahead. Turn right. Take the second left. It's on the corner.

امش فى خط مستقيم. اتجه يمينًا. خذ المنعطف الثانى على اليسار. إنه فى الزاوية.

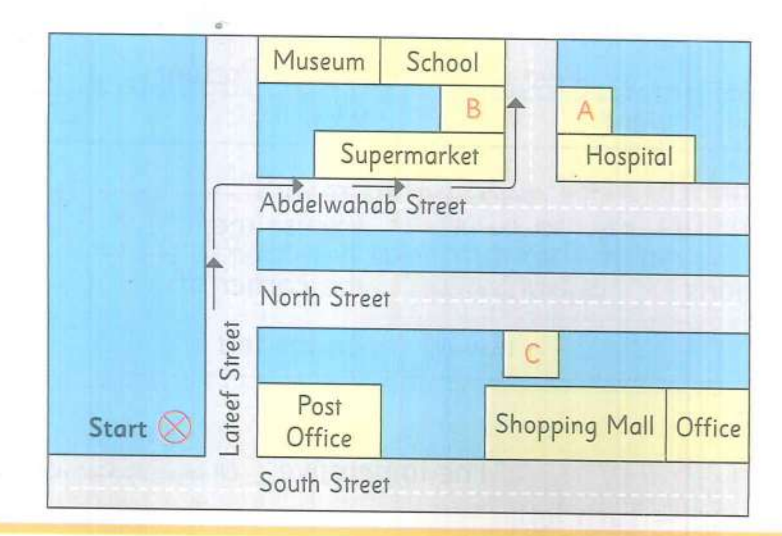


Thank you!

شكرًا لك!

Hi Dina!
I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions.
From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead.
Take the second right to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.
See you soon!
Fareeda

- مرحبا دينا!
- أنا سعيدة جدًا لأنك سوف تأتين لمنزلى اليوم. إليك بعض الاتجاهات. من تقاطع الشارع الجنوبى مع شارع لطيف، اتجهى للأمام مباشرة. اتخذى اليمين الثانى إلى شارع عبد الوهاب. اتجهى للأمام مباشرة، اتجهى يسارًا عند السوبر ماركت. منزلى يقع بين السوبر ماركت والمدرسة.
- أراك قريبًا! فريدة.







3. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

tourist boat	قارب سياحى	summer	فصل الصيف	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
Chinese	اللغة الصينية	river	نهر	tourists	سياح

Extra vocabulary

child	طفل	friend	صديق	boat	قارب
parents	الوالدان	interesting (adj.)	شيق	the Nile	نهر النيل
world	العالَم	places	أماكن	suddenly	فجأة
fun	ممتع	boring (adj.)	ممل	happy (adj.)	سعيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	save	ينقذ	saved
stop	يتوقف	stopped	smile	يبتسم	smiled
shout	يصيح	shouted	decide	يقرر	decided
call	ينادى	called			
jump	يقفز	jumped			

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	speak	يتحدث	spoke
see	يرى	saw	fall into	يسقط فى	fell into
meet	يقابل	met	swim	يسبح (يعوم)	swam

Expressions and Phrases

live on	يعيش على	work on	يعمل على
travel up and down	يسافر ذهابًا وإيابًا	from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
one day	ذات يوم	Please help me!	ساعدنى رجاء
jump into	يقفز فى	thank you so much	شكرًا جزيلًا لك

Take care!

- تبدأ أسماء الأشخاص والجنسيات واللغات والأماكن الشهيرة بأحرف كبيرة.

e.g. (Sherif – Chinese – English – the Nile)

- استخدم الفاصلة العليا للتعبير عن الملكية.

e.g. Sherif's dad

Living on a boat العيش على متن قارب



4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats, so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.
He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

صديقى شريف يعيش على قارب فى الصيف. يعمل والداه فى القوارب السياحية ولذلك يذهب معهما. يسافرون ذهابًا وإيابًا فى النيل. يحب شريف الصيف كثيرًا. يرى العديد من الأماكن الممتعة ويلتقى أناسًا من جميع أنحاء العالم. يتحدث الإنجليزية والصينية مع السياح.

The middle

One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river! The child shouted "Please help me!" Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child! The child smiled and said, "Thank you so much!"

ذات يوم توقف القارب ورأى شريف بعض الأطفال يلعبون. وفجأة سقط طفل صغير فى النهر! صرخ الطفل «أرجوك ساعدنى!» استدعى شريف أباه. رأى والد شريف الطفل وقفز فى النهر. سبح وأنقذ الطفل! ابتسم الطفل وقال: «شكرًا جزيلًا لك!».

The end

Sherif was very happy, but he also decided to learn to swim.

كان شريف سعيدًا جدًّا، لكنه قرر أيضًا تعلم السباحة.

The moral of the story

We should help people when they need help.

يجب أن نساعد الناس حين يحتاجون إلى المساعدة.

Check

1 Where does Sherif live in the summer?

....

2 How did Sherif's dad help the child?

....

3 Why do you think Sherif decided to learn to swim?

....





5. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:





To pronounce /v/ correctly:

لتنطق /v/ بطريقة صحيحة:

Touch your neck with your finger. Say "van". Your neck moves.

المس رقبتك بإصبعك. قل "van". رقبتك تتحرك.



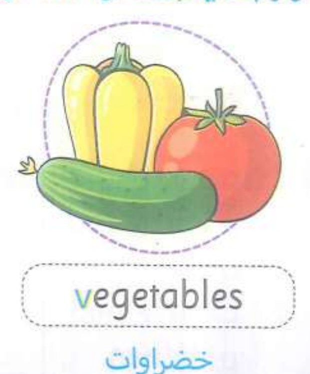
living room

غرفة المعيشة



van

شاحنة صغيرة



vegetables

خضراوات

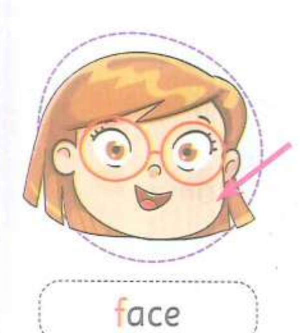
Ff /f/

To pronounce /f/ correctly:

لتنطق /f/ بطريقة صحيحة:

- Touch your neck with your finger. Say "fish". Your neck doesn't move.

المس رقبتك بإصبعك. قل "fish". رقبتك لا تتحرك.



face

وجه

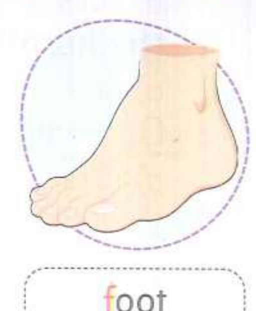
fan

مروحة



fish

سمكة



foot

قدم

Check

Listen and circle:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. van – fan
2. foot – vegetables
3. face – living room



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Khalid lives in a small ....
a) city b) town c) desert d) mountain

2 Khalid goes to school ....
a) on foot b) by car c) by bus d) by boat

3 The school is .... the post office.
a) in front of b) behind c) next to d) under

4 There's a .... in front of the school.
a) park b) hospital c) shopping mall d) supermarket

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It is hot today. We need to turn on the .... محافظة المنوفية – إدارة تلا التعليمية 2024
a) bus b) van c) fan d) fish

2 Excuse me! .... is the post office?
a) When b) Why c) Where d) Who

3 To go to the mall, go .... ahead, then turn left.
a) street b) straight c) right d) corner

4 Hana's house is .... the supermarket and the school.
a) between b) next c) in front d) on

5 .... the second left. My house is on the right.
a) Travel b) Go c) Take d) Come

6 Sherif .... English and Chinese.
a) says b) meets c) speaks d) shouts

7 The hospital is .... the corner.
a) at b) in c) with d) on

8 Go straight and .... left.
a) take b) turn c) see d) come

9 .... straight ahead.
a) Have b) Go c) Turn d) Take

10 The post office is .... the left.
a) in b) on c) at d) between

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

summer – down – meet – parents – world

محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الساحل التعليمية 2024

I live on a boat in the summer. My ....(1).............. work on tourist boats, so I go with them. We travel up and ....(2).............. the Nile. I like the ....(3).............. very much. I see many interesting places and I meet people from all over the ....(4).............. .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الخليفة والمقطم التعليمية 2024

My friend Sherif is from Aswan. He lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Sherif likes the .... very much.

a) winter b) fall c) summer d) spring

2 The underlined word "interesting" means ....

a) nice b) boring c) bad d) old

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where do Sherif's parents work?

....

4 Where is Sherif from?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Excuse me! .... (What) is the supermarket, please?

2 .... (Turning) left, my house is on the corner.

3 .... (Went) straight ahead. Then turn left.

4 The school is .... (in) the corner of South Street.

5 .... (Took) the second left at the supermarket.

6 The hospital is .... (next) the school and the supermarket.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 my friend Sherif lives on a boat

....

2 i can speak English and arabic.

محافظة الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية 2024

....



Lessons 4 & 5





Writing



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

article	مقال	Hurghada	الغردقة	town	مدينة صغيرة
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	beach	شاطئ	interesting (adj.)	ممتع
Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	safaris	رحلات سفارى	Sahl Hasheesh	سهل حشيش
bazaar	بازار	worker	عامل	fresh (adj.)	طازج

Extra vocabulary

city	مدينة كبيرة	called (adj.)	يُدعى/ يُسمى	east	شرق
about	حوالى	south	جنوب	map	خريطة
drawings	رسومات	diagram	رسم بيانى	facts	حقائق
paragraph	فقرة	bold text	نص غامق	village	قرية
headings	عناوين رئيسية	poster	ملصق	station	محطة
sports club	نادى رياضى	kind (adj.)	عطوف	happy (adj.)	سعيد

Expressions and Phrases

in the east of Egypt	فى شرق مصر	on the Red Sea	على البحر الأحمر
lots of	الكثير من	things to do	أشياء نقوم بها
go on safaris	يذهب فى رحلات السفارى	on the map	على الخريطة
do research	يقوم بالبحث	need to	يحتاج إلى أن
work at	يعمل فى	every week	كل أسبوع
check the food is fresh	تتحقق من أن الطعام طازج	find something	يجد شيئًا ما

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Hurghada is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. تقع الغردقة فى شرق مصر على ساحل البحر الأحمر.
* About 190,000 people live in Hurghada. يعيش حوالى ١٩٠٠٠٠ شخص فى الغردقة.
* There's a beach and lots of interesting things to do in Hurghada. يوجد شاطئ والعديد من الأشياء الممتعة للقيام بها فى الغردقة.

Take care!

- يتم دائمًا كتابة أسماء المدن والبلدان بأحرف كبيرة.


e.g. Red Sea – Sahara Desert – Sahl Hasheesh

- لاحظ أن: "town" مدينة صغيرة - و "city" مدينة كبيرة -



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

City المدينة	Hurghada
Where is it? أين تقع؟	In the east of Egypt on the Red Sea
How many people live there? كم عدد السكان الذين يعيشون هناك؟	About 190,000 people
Interesting things in Hurghada الأشياء الشيقة بمدينة الغردقة	Sahara Desert - Sahl Hasheesh

Hurghada – My town



Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

• الغردقة - مدينتى

• مرحبًا، أنا مريم. أعيش فى مدينة تسمى الغردقة. تقع فى شرق مصر مطلة على البحر الأحمر. إنها مدينة كبيرة ويعيش فيها حوالى ١٩٠ ألف شخص. يوجد شاطئ فى الغردقة، وهناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التى يمكن القيام بها. توجد الصحراء الكبرى حيث يقوم الكثير من السياح برحلات سفارى. لدينا سهل حشيش فى جنوب الغردقة. يوجد بعض المنازل الجميلة والبازارات المثيرة للاهتمام.



Hurghada beach



Sahl Hasheesh, Egypt



Sahara Desert

Check

1 Where does Mariam live?

....

2 Where is Hurghada?

....

3 Where do tourists go on safaris?

....





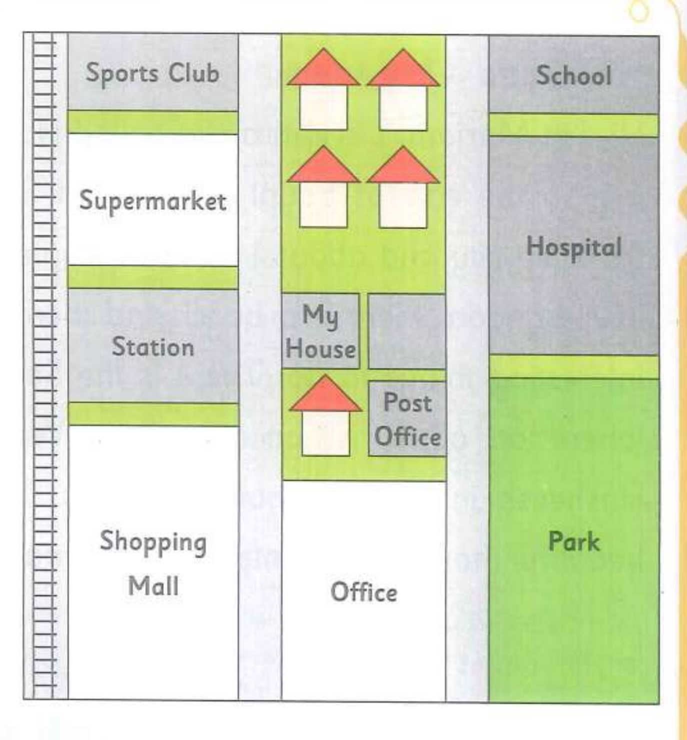
3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The people who help us: The supermarket worker

الأشخاص الذين يساعدوننا: عاملة السوبر ماركت





This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food.
Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

• هذه منى. إنها تعمل فى السوبر ماركت بجانب منزلى أنا وعائلتى. نراها كل أسبوع عندما نشترى الطعام. تتحقق منى مما إذا كان الطعام طازجًا. هى تساعدنا عندما لا نجد شيئًا ما. هى عطوفة جدًا وسعيدة.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Mona works at a/an (restaurant – supermarket – office – hospital).
2. Mona (tastes – checks – works – helps) the food is fresh.
3. "Fresh food" means (new food – old food – bad food – spicy food).
4. The word "kind" in the text means (strong – tired – nice – huge).



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The .... in Hurghada are beautiful. We can swim and play there.

محافظة الغربية – إدارة غرب المحلة الكبرى التعليمية 2024

a) schools b) offices c) beaches d) stores

2 Mariam lives in a .... called Hurghada.

a) city b) village c) country d) beach

3 Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt on the Red Sea.

a) west b) north c) east d) south

4 About 190,000 people .... in Hurghada.

a) come b) swim c) live d) work

5 The .... is where tourists can go on safaris.

a) beach b) park c) bazaars d) Sahara Desert

6 There are some beautiful houses and interesting .... in Sahl Hasheesh.

a) vans b) tents c) boats d) bazaars

7 We can buy food at the .... where Mona works.

a) desert b) beach c) supermarket d) safari park

8 When we buy the food, Mona .... the food is fresh.

a) eats b) sells c) sees d) checks

9 The worker at the supermarket helps us when we can't .... something.

a) find b) live c) go d) meet

10 There's a beach and lots of .... things to do in Hurghada.

a) scary b) boring c) interesting d) strange

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

kind – food – supermarket – fresh – office

This is Hana. She works at the ....(1)............ near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy ....(2)............ . Hana checks the food is ....(3)............ . She helps us when we can't find something. She is very ....(4)............ and happy. We all love her.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) Cairo b) Aswan c) Luxor d) Hurghada

2 The underlined word "It" refers to ....
a) the Red Sea b) the beach c) Sahl Hasheesh d) Sahara Desert

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where is Hurghada?

....

4 What are there in Sahl Hasheesh?

....

4 Punctuate the following:

1 mona works at the supermarket

محافظة المنيا – إدارة سمالوط التعليمية 2024

....

2 how many people live there

....

5 Write a paragraph about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

"My city"

City:	Cairo
Interesting things in Cairo:	The Nile, Egyptian Museum

....
....
....
....

Unit 4 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

kitchen	مطبخ	bedroom	غرفة النوم
bathroom	حمَّام	balcony	شرفة (بلكونة)
tent	خيمة	house	منزل
living room	غرفة المعيشة	cloth	قماش
building	مبنى	favorite	مفضل
dining room	غرفة الطعام	fantastic	رائع
houseboat	منزل عائم	apartment	شقة
outside	بالخارج	desert	صحراء
street	شارع	grandparents	أجداد

Lesson (2)

school	مدرسة	shopping mall	مول تجارى
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	office	مكتب
post office	مكتب بريد	hospital	مستشفى
village	قرية	couch	أريكة
plant	نبات	letters	خطابات
the Nile	نهر النيل	the biggest	الأكبر
sick	مريض	shoes	حذاء

Lesson (3)

go straight ahead	اتجه للأمام مباشرة	take the second right	خذ المنعطف الثانى على اليمين
it's on the corner	إنه فى الزاوية	turn left	انعطف يسارًا
turn right	انعطف يمينًا	happy	سعيد
street	شارع	river	نهر
summer	الصيف	Chinese	اللغة الصينية
tourist boat	قارب سياحى	van	شاحنة صغيرة
vegetables	خضراوات	fan	مروحة
face	وجه	foot	قدم

Lessons (4 & 5)

Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	Sahl Hasheesh	سهل حشيش
Hurghada	الغردقة	bazaar	بازار
beach	شاطئ	interesting	ممتع
called	يدعى	safaris	رحلات سفارى
drawing	رسومات	facts	حقائق
headings	عناوين رئيسية	poster	ملصق
paragraph	فقرة	south	جنوب
east	شرق	about	حوالى

Language Focus

1. Prepositions of place:

e.g.


on


in


under


above

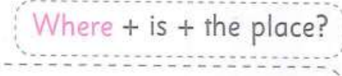

next to


between


behind


in front of

2. Asking about places:


Where + is + the place?

e.g.



A: Where is the office?
B: It's in front of the park.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

رائع	....	غرفة النوم	....
الحمَّام	....	غرفة المعيشة	....
غرفة الطعام	....	شرفة (بلكونة)	....
منزل	....	خيمة	....
شارع	....	شقة	....
منزل عائم	....	رائع	....
مفضل	....	أجداد	....

Lesson 2

قرية	....	نهر النيل	....
مدرسة	....	سوبر ماركت	....
مركز تجارى	....	مكتب البريد	....
مكتب	....	مستشفى	....
مريض	....	خطابات	....

Lesson 3

الصيف	....	إنه فى الزاوية	....
انعطف يسارًا	....	اتجه للأمام مباشرة	....
خذ المنعطف الثانى على اليمين	....	انعطف يمينًا	....
قارب سياحى	....	خضراوات	....
شاحنة صغيرة	....	مروحة	....
وجه	....	قدم	....
سمكة	....	اللغة الصينية	....

Lessons 4 & 5

الغردقة	....	الصحراء الكبرى	....
شاطئ	....	بازار	....
شرق	....	رحلات سفارى	....
شاطئ	....	جنوب	....

WRITING TIME





لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about your home:

- I live in a (نوع المنزل) with my family.
- There is (مكونات المنزل).
- My favorite is (مكانك المفضل فى المنزل).
- I can (أشياء تفعلها فى مكانك المفضل).
- (باقى أفراد العائلة) likes the (جزء آخر من المنزل).
- He/She can (أشياء أخرى فى المكان المفضل).

"My home"

I live in a house with my family.
There is a living room with a big balcony.
My favorite is the bedroom. I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom.
My mom likes the kitchen. She can cook delicious meals there.

How to write about directions:

- I live in a big city / village.
- Here are some directions to my + المكان الذى تعيش فيه.
- Use direction phrases like:
  * Go straight ahead.
  * Turn left / right.
  * Take the first / second turn.

"Directions to my apartment"

I live in an apartment in a big city.
Here are some directions to my apartment.
Go straight ahead to Nahda Street.
Take the second right onto Pyramids Street.
Go straight ahead, then turn right.
My apartment is in a tall building next to the supermarket. It's on the fifth floor.

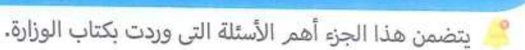
How to write about your town:

City	اسم مدينتك
Where is it?	مكان المدينة على الخريطة
How many people live there?	عدد سكان المدينة
Interesting things to do there.	أشياء ممتعة للقيام بها فى المدينة

"My town"

I live in a city called Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt, on the Red Sea. It's a big city, and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there are lots of interesting things to do.
There is the Sahara Desert, where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

Unit 4 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER


يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and complete the sentences:

1

The tent is next to the car.

2

There's a plant .... the couch.

3

The pink house is .... the red house and the yellow house.

4

There are 4 chairs and a table .... the balcony.

2 Read and match:



A

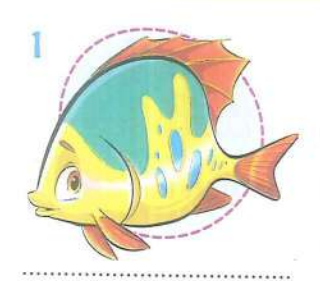
1 where we buy food
2 where we send letters
3 where I learn
4 where I buy clothes and shoes
5 where my mom and dad work
6 where we go when we are sick

B

a. ( ) office
b. ( ) supermarket
c. ( ) shopping mall
d. ( ) school
e. ( ) hospital
f. ( ) post office

3 Read and write:

face – fan – fish – foot – living room – van – vegetables

1

....

2

....

3

....

4

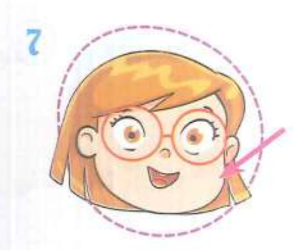
....

5

....

6

....

7

....







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 Nada works at the supermarket .... my house.

a) above b) in front of c) near d) behind

2 We see Nada every week when we buy ....

a) food b) clothes c) ice cream d) books

3 Nada checks the food is ....

a) bad b) fresh c) delicious d) cooked

4 Nada is kind and ....

a) boring c) excited c) happy d) sad



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 My flat consists of three ....

a) maps b) rivers c) deserts d) rooms

2 The tent is made of ....

a) paper b) wood c) cloth d) plastic

3 We watch TV together in the ....

a) bathroom b) balcony c) living room d) kitchen

4 The .... is the place where I buy clothes and shoes.

a) office b) school c) shopping mall d) hospital

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



hospital – shopping mall – letters – clothes – supermarket

There are different places in my town. We buy food at the ....(1).......... . We send ....(2).......... at the post office. I learn at the school. I buy clothes and shoes at the ....(3).......... . My mom and dad work in an office. We go to the ....(4).......... when we are sick.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Sara. I live in a city called Mansoura. It is a big city. There are a lot of interesting places to visit in Mansoura. I live with my family in a big apartment. My father is a doctor. He works at a hospital. My mother is an engineer.
She designs buildings. I have two brothers and one sister. My brother likes football. My sister and I like tennis. On Friday, we go to the park and the zoo. We see a lot of animals there.

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة أجا التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) Sara's school b) Sara's house c) Sara's family d) Sara's friend

2 The underlined word "there" refers to the ....
a) school b) zoo c) bank d) hospital

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does Sara's father do? ....
4 What does Sara play? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Excuse me! .... (Who) is the shopping mall?
2 My school is next .... (two) the park. محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين التعليمية 2024
3 There are trees .... (on) front of the house. محافظة الإسكندرية 2024
4 Go straight ahead, then .... (turning) left.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

i love living in an apartment محافظة أسيوط - إدارة أبوتيج التعليمية 2024

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My house" محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

big – rooms

....
....
....
....

Assess your progress

< 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Solve more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!



AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

favorite – bedroom – you – apartment

Hamza : Where do .... live?

Ahmed : I live in an .... It has a big balcony.

Hamza : Which is your .... room?

Ahmed : The .... is my favorite. I can do my homework quietly there.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 The cat is (behind – next – front) to the box.

2 A: (What – Where – Why) is your school? B: It's behind the park.

3 In the desert, some people live in a (hospital – houseboat – tent).

4 Go straight ahead and then (turn – take – run) right.

5 My parents live on a (houseboat – house – tent). They love living on water.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 lives – a – Sherif – city – in – big.

....

2 a beach – Hurghada – There – is – in.

....

3 is – the – Where – office – post?

....

4 houseboat – grandparents – My – on – live – a.

....

5 relax – I – can – in my – bedroom.

....

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر نوفمبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We can use the .... inside tomatoes to grow new plants.
a) leaves b) roots c) seeds d) shoots

2 Reed and .... grow near rivers and lakes.
a) bean plants b) tamarisk trees c) orange trees d) lotus flowers

3 The .... grows taller to have leaves.
a) roots b) shoot c) seed d) soil

4 Plants that grow in the .... habitat don't need much water to grow.
a) desert b) agricultural c) river d) lake

5 Farmers work in the .... habitat.
a) river b) lake c) desert d) agricultural

6 First, you need to put a seed under the .... and water it every day.
a) shoot b) soil c) roots d) leaves

7 .... grow under the soil. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة 6 أكتوبر التعليمية 2024
a) Leaves b) Roots c) Flowers d) Shoots

8 Tomatoes are .... before they are red. محافظة دمياط - إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024
a) brown b) green c) white d) black

9 The plant roots grow .... the soil. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024
a) above b) under c) on d) in front of

10 .... process is when you grow a seed into a full plant.
a) Recycling b) Farming c) Germination d) Fishing

11 My sister goes to .... to learn.
a) school b) bedroom c) hospital d) post office

12 Nader went to the .... when he was sick.
a) living room b) hospital c) office d) school

13 We can see the street from our .... محافظة البحيرة - إدارة رشيد التعليمية 2024
a) balcony b) bedroom c) tent d) kitchen

14 Let's go to the .... to buy some new clothes.
a) post office b) home c) shopping mall d) supermarket

15 Mom went to the .... to buy some food.
a) garden b) office c) house d) supermarket

16 We can send letters at the ....

a) supermarket b) post office c) office d) apartment

17 The school is a place where we .... محافظة المنوفية – إدارة قويسنا التعليمية 2024

a) play b) learn c) eat d) cook

18 I have a big balcony in my new .... محافظة القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

a) street b) tent c) apartment d) park

19 I live on a .... because I love living on water. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024

a) tent b) cave c) house d) houseboat

20 The post office is .... of the cinema. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

a) next to b) between c) in front d) behind

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fruits – water – green – villages – life

In the past, life was very difficult, people lived in small ....(1)......... . They worked hard. They planted millions of seeds. They grew many ....(2)......... and vegetables. Today, they live a good ....(3)......... . There is enough water. Farmers plant trees and flowers to make the land ....(4)......... .

desert – Delta – Egyptians – baskets – water

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient ....(1)......... used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and ....(2)......... from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of ....(3)......... and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile ....(4)......... near the river.

river – Desert – bazaars – east – beach

Lara lives in a city called Hurghada. It is in the ....(1)......... of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a ....(2)......... and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara ....(3)......... where lots of tourists go on safaris. It has some beautiful houses and interesting ....(4)......... .

hospital – shopping mall – letters – clothes – office

There are different places in my town. We buy food at the supermarket. We send ....(1)......... at the post office. I learn at the school. I buy clothes and shoes at the ....(2)......... . My mom and dad work in an ....(3)......... . We go to the ....(4)......... . when we are sick.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 This ice cream is the .... (cold) dessert I had today.
2 The sun is the .... (bright) star in our solar system.
3 Is hot chocolate the .... (more) delicious drink you like?
4 What's the .... (funny) movie you ever watched?
5 This house is the .... (more) expensive one in our street.
6 The red flower is the .... (more) beautiful. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة البساتين التعليمية 2024
7 The elephant is the .... (fat) animal. محافظة القليوبية - إدارة قليوب التعليمية 2024
8 My city is the .... (nice) place to live in. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الدقي التعليمية 2024
9 I think the cheetah is .... (fast) animal.
10 The snakes are the .... (more) dangerous animals. محافظة البحيرة - إدارة رشيد التعليمية 2024
11 The post office is next .... (on) the bank. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون التعليمية 2024
12 The cat is .... (next) the bed and the table. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024
13 A: .... (what) is the school? B: It's next to the hospital. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024
14 A: Where's the school? B: .... (Goes) straight ahead. محافظة دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد التعليمية 2024
15 The school is in front .... (on) the bank. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المقطم التعليمية 2024
16 The post office is .... (of) the corner.
17 Habiba's apartment is .... (next) of Dad's office.
18 I have a fish that lives .... (under) a fishbowl.
19 The couch is .... (in front) to my sister's bed.
20 Put your book .... (under) the desk, please, Ola.

4 Punctuate the following:

1 Where s the post office محافظة البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024

....

2 he lives in cairo. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة 2024

....

3 nabil's town is very small محافظة دمياط - إدارة الزرقا التعليمية 2024

....

4 some people live in a tent محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

....

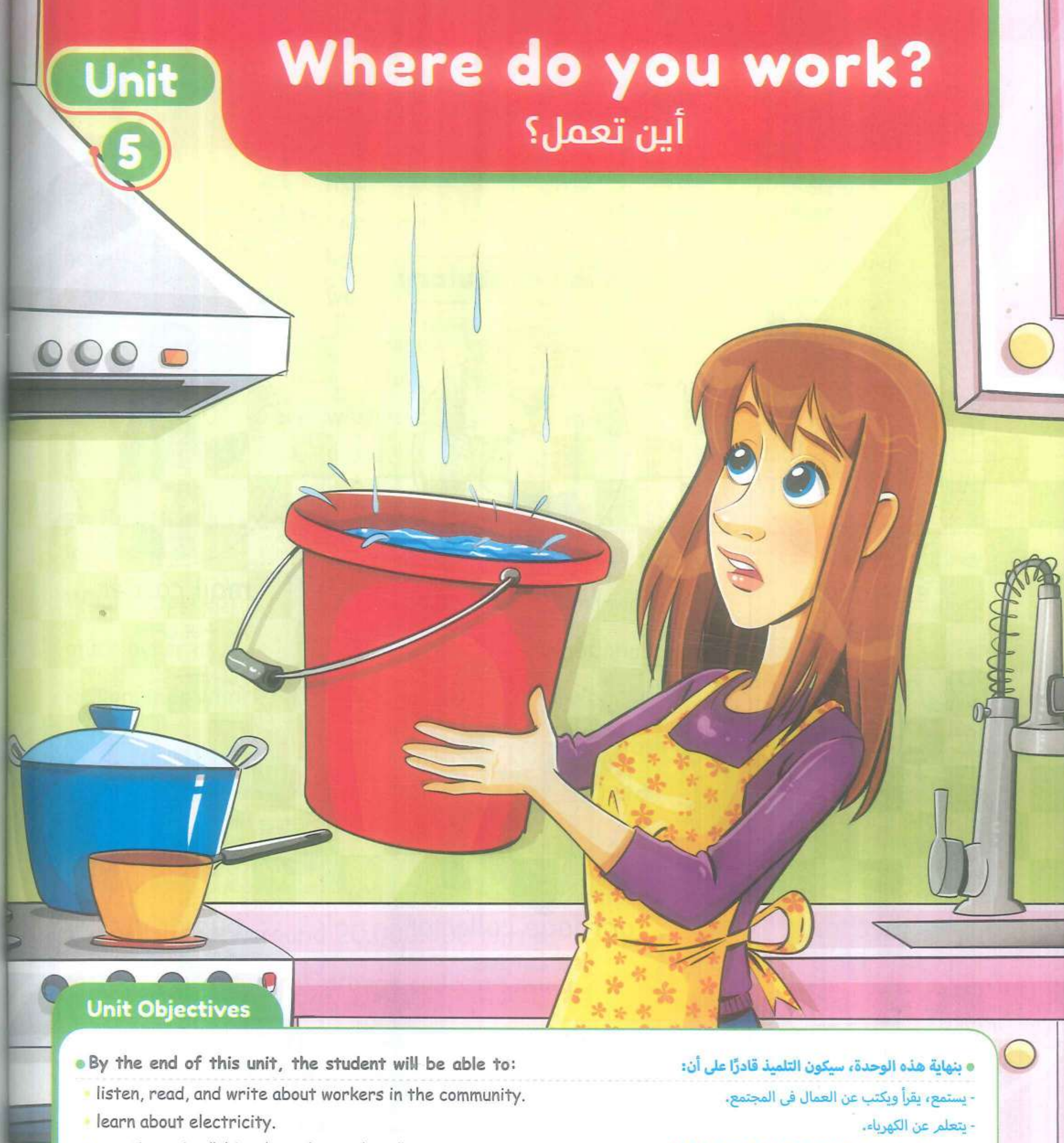
5 the rose is the most beautiful flower محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية التعليمية 2024

....

6 lucas lives on a farm محافظة الجيزة - إدارة 6 أكتوبر التعليمية 2024

....

لمزيد من التدريبات ارجع إلى صفحة 224.



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, and write about workers in the community.
  - learn about electricity.
  - practice using "this, that, these, those".
  - practice word stress.
  - think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
  - make a report about workers in the community.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، يقرأ ويكتب عن العمال فى المجتمع.
  - يتعلم عن الكهرباء.
  - يتدرب على استخدام "this, that, these, those".
  - يتدرب على نطق المقاطع المشددة.
  - يفكر ويكتب عن إيجابيات وسلبيات وظائف مختلفة.
  - يقوم بعمل تقرير عن العمال فى المجتمع.

Did you know?

- A *broken *faucet *dripping once per second can waste more than 13.000 liters of water in a year.

Find out!

- To become a plumber, you will need to complete a training program between 2 and 5 years. Then, you'll have a *certificate that you are a *skilled plumber.

*broken	مكسور	*faucet	حنفية	*dripping	ينقط	*certificate	شهادة	*skilled	ماهر



Lesson 1
I Love My Job
أنا أحب وظيفتى





1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



electrician
كهربائى



plumber
سباك



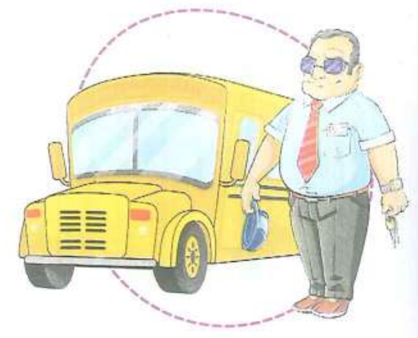
mail carrier
ساعى بريد



mechanic
ميكانيكى



garbage collector
جامع القمامة



bus driver
سائق أتوبيس

Extra vocabulary

job	وظيفة	wet (adj.)	مبتل	messy (adj.)	فوضوى
pipes	مواسير المياه	faucet	صنبور المياه	different (adj.)	مختلف
young (adj.)	صغير السن	well	حسنًا	really	حقًّا
driving	القيادة	better (adj.)	أفضل	parcel	طرد
trash	قمامة	problem	مشكلة	interesting (adj.)	شيق
difficult (adj.)	صعب	tons	أطنان	garbage	قمامة



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ci) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش) كما فى كلمة (electrician).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (b) لا يُنطق (silent) فى كلمة (plumber).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج) فى كلمة (garbage).

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
fix	يصلح	fixed	arrive	يصل	arrived
happen	يحدث	happened	produce	ينتج	produced
hope	يأمل	hoped	collect	يجمع	collected
wait	ينتظر	waited	want	يريد	wanted

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
(am/is) / are	يكون	was/were	forget	ينسى	forgot
drive	يقود	drove	take	يأخذ	took

Expressions and Phrases

love/like being	يحب كونه	have to	يضطر إلى
What happened?	ماذا حدث؟	I don't really like	أنا لا أحب حقًّا
much better at ...	أفضل كثيرًا فى ...	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟
make things work	اجعل الأشياء تعمل	here's	ها هو هنا
take out	يتخلص من	put the trash out	يضع القمامة بالخارج
lots of	الكثير من	work hard	يعمل بجد

Did you know?

Cairo produces around 20.000.000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.

تنتج القاهرة حوالى ٢٠،٠٠٠،٠٠٠ طن من القمامة كل عام. جامعو القمامة يعملون بجد لجمع كل ذلك.



Important sentences جمل هامة

* Dad loves being a plumber. يحب أبى كونه سبَّاكًا.
* A plumber has to fix pipes and faucets. يصلح السباك المواسير وصنابير المياه.
* Youssef likes being an electrician. يوسف يحب أن يكون كهربائيًّا.
* An electrician makes things work. يجعل الكهربائى الأشياء تعمل.

Take care!

١- تأتى بعض أسماء الوظائف من (فعل + er/or):

e.g. plumb ⟶ plumber
carry ⟶ carrier

collect ⟶ collector
drive ⟶ driver

٢- بعض الأفعال مثل like/ love يأتى بعدها الفعل مضاف إليه "ing" .

e.g. - I like being a plumber. - I love making things work.

Language Note

Asking and answering about likes/ dislikes: السؤال والإجابة عن الأشياء التى نحبها أو نكرهها:

A: Do you like / love + noun / v + (ing) ....?

B: Yes, I love/like + noun/ v + (ing)... .

B: No, I don't really love/like + noun/ v + (ing)... .

e.g. A: Do you like your job?
B: Yes, I love being a plumber.

A: Do you like fixing cars?
B: No, I don't really like fixing cars.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Youssef is a/an (bus driver – garbage collector – electrician – mail carrier). He loves making things work.

2 Here's the (mail carrier – bus driver – garbage collector – electrician). He collects the trash.

3 A plumber fixes (chairs – pipes – balls – cars) and faucets.

4 My room was (difficult – wet – messy – young) yesterday. I had to tidy it.

5 A/An (mechanic – driver – plumber – electrician) drives to many different places.

6 A (garbage collector – bus driver – mail carrier – mechanic) brings us the parcels.



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Zeinab Dad, do you like your job?

أبى، هل تحب عملك؟



Dad Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's wet and messy because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

نعم، أحب كونى سباكًا. فى بعض الأحيان يكون الأمر مبللًا وفوضويًا لأننى يجب أن أصلح المواسير والحنفيات.



Zeinab Did you want to do a different job when you were young?

هل أردت القيام بعمل مختلف عندما كنت صغيرًا؟



Dad Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.

نعم ، أردت أن أكون سائق أتوبيس أو ميكانيكيًا.



Zeinab So what happened?

إذًا ماذا حدث؟



Dad Well, I don't really like driving! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!

حسنًا ، أنا لا أحب القيادة حقًّا! كنت أفضل كثيرًا فى إصلاح المواسير والحنفيات عن السيارات!



Zeinab What about you, Youssef? Do you like being an electrician?

وماذا عنك يا يوسف؟ هل تحب كونك كهربائيًا؟





Youssef Yes, I love making things work!

نعم، أحب أن أجعل الأشياء تعمل!



Dad Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my parcel ...

أوه ، انظر ، ها هو ساعى البريد! أتمنى أن يكون لديه طردى ...



Zeinab And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash! Wait please ...

وهناك جامع قمامة! أوه، لقد نسيت إخراج القمامة! انتظر من فضلك ...



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Amr is a/an ....

a) teacher b) plumber c) electrician d) mechanic

2 Sometimes, it's .... and messy.

a) hot b) cold c) dry d) wet

3 Amr .... being a plumber.

a) hates b) has c) likes d) dislikes

4 People are always .... to see the plumber.

a) happy b) sorry c) sad d) worried

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A/An .... helps us fix the pipes to get water. He is very important to us.

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة منوف التعليمية 2024

a) tourist guide b) plumber c) electrician d) mail carrier

2 A .... helps us all. He takes away all the trash.

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء التعليمية 2024

a) mail carrier b) garbage collector c) builder d) mechanic

3 The .... fix the cars and buses.

محافظة بورسعيد 2024

a) electricians b) mechanics c) plumbers d) garbage collectors

4 Cairo produces around 20 million tons of .... every year.

a) pipes b) parcels c) garbage d) faucets

5 Plumbers fix pipes and ....

القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024

a) tables b) chairs c) cars d) faucets

6 The .... arrived. Let's get on the bus.

a) mechanic b) bus driver c) garbage collector d) plumber

7 My clothes become .... after raining.

a) dry b) hot c) wet d) near

8 I was much better at .... pipes and faucets than cars.

a) fixing b) driving c) eating d) reading

9 We need a mechanic to .... our car.

a) drive b) paint c) play d) fix

10 A mail carrier brings us ....

a) pipes b) faucets c) parcels d) cars

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mail carrier – mechanic – trash – electrician – faucets

Different people have different jobs. A plumber fixes pipes and ....(1)............ . A mechanic fixes cars. An ....(2)............ makes things work. A ....(3)............ has our parcels. A garbage collector takes the ....(4)............ . I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers our parcels. An electrician makes things work. A garbage collector takes out the trash. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. A mechanic fixes cars and buses. All these workers should work together to make our life easier.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) food　　b) animals　　c) jobs　　d) places

2 The word "..................................." in the text means garbage.

a) trash　　b) faucets　　c) fixes　　d) places

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does a mechanic do?

....

4 Why should all workers work together?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

Dad do you like your job

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"I like being a plumber."

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

important job – fix – pipes

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2
Is it near or far?
هل هذا قريب أم بعيد؟





A Language Focus

Demonstrative pronouns أسماء الإشارة

We use demonstrative pronouns (this – that – these – those) to say how close an object is to the speaker.
نستخدم "أسماء الإشارة" لتوضيح مدى قرب الأشياء من المتحدث.

For singular or uncountable nouns: للأسماء المفرد أو الأسماء التى لا تعد:

This هذا (للقريب)

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم قريب (مفرد / غير معدود).





This is the electrician's screwdriver.

That هذا (للبعيد)

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم بعيد (مفرد / غير معدود).







That is the faucet the plumber is fixing.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 (This – That) is Omar's pen.

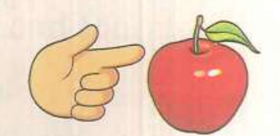


2 (This – That) is my sister's pet.





3 (That – This) is my apple.



4 (This – That) is the doll I bought yesterday.



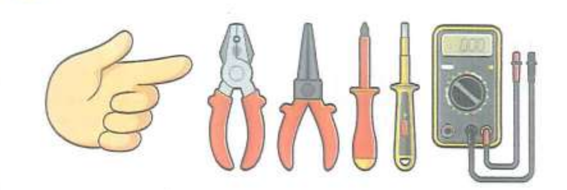


For plural nouns: للأسماء الجمع:

These هؤلاء (للقريب)

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.

e.g.



These are the electrician's tools.

Those هؤلاء (للبعيد)

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.

e.g.





Those are the mail carrier's parcels.

Check

1. Choose the correct answer:

1 Let's play with (these – those) balls.

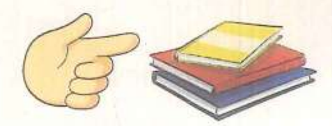


2 (These – Those) are Mona's crayons.





3 (These – Those) are Hana's books.



4 (These – Those) kites are very colorful.





2. Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets:

1 This .... (are) the mail carrier. محافظة الإسكندرية – إدارة العامرية التعليمية 2024

2 Those .... (is) my pencils. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة حلوان التعليمية 2024

3 That .... (are) your pen. محافظة البحيرة – إدارة المحمودية التعليمية 2024

4 These .... (is) the electrician's tools. محافظة دمياط – إدارة دمياط الجديدة التعليمية 2024



B Electricity الكهرباء



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

electricity	الكهرباء	storm	عاصفة	lightning	البرق
electric shock	صدمة كهربائية	socket	مقبس الكهرباء	plug	فيشة

Extra vocabulary

letter	جواب	repair shop	ورشة	drivers	سائقين
near (adj.)	قريب	far (adj.)	بعيد	tools	أدوات
electrical (adj.)	كهربى	interview	مقابلة شخصية	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
quickly	بسرعة	safely	بأمان	interviewer	محاور
speed	سرعة	light	ضوء	flash	وميض
huge (adj.)	ضخم	amount	كمية	energy	طاقة
bodies	أجسام	wet (adj.)	مبلل	dry (adj.)	جاف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
deliver	يوصل	delivered	practice	يتدرب	practiced
drip	ينقط	dripped	control	يتحكم	controlled
study	يدرس	studied	touch	يلمس	touched

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	get	يحصل على	got
become	يصبح	became	burn	يحرق	burnt
tell	يخبر	told	put	يضع	put

Expressions and Phrases

know how to ...	يعرف كيف أن ...	work safely	يعمل بأمان	close to	قريبة من
for a year	لمدة عام	How fast ...?	كم سرعة ...؟	make sure	يتأكد
put ... into	يضع (شيئًا ما) فى	speed of light	سرعة الضوء	never touch	لا تلمس

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Electricity travels fast, close to the speed of light. الكهرباء تسافر بسرعة تقارب سرعة الضوء.
* If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. إذا أصابتنا صدمة كهربية، لا نستطيع التحكم بأجسامنا.
* Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. لا تلمس أى شىء كهربى ويداك مبللة.
* Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs. لا تضع أى شىء فى مقبس الكهرباء. استخدم الفيش فقط.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Amira the electrician



This is Amira, she's an electrician. She studied and practiced for three years before she became an electrician. She knows how to work safely with electricity.

Interviewer : **Tell us something interesting about electricity.**

Amira : Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light?
In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm!



- المذيعة: أخبرينا بشيء مثير للاهتمام عن الكهرباء.
- أميرة: هل تعلمي أن الكهرباء تنتقل بسرعة كبيرة تقترب من سرعة الضوء؟ في بعض الأحيان نرى وميضًا من البرق في أثناء العاصفة. هناك كمية هائلة من الطاقة في عاصفة كهربائية!

Interviewer : **Is electricity dangerous?**

Amira : Yes, very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us.

Interviewer : **How can we use electricity safely?**

Amira : Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.



- المذيعة: هل الكهرباء خطيرة؟
- أميرة : نعم، إنها خطيرة جدًّا. إذا أصابتنا صدمة كهربية فلن نستطيع التحكم بأجسامنا. يمكن أيضًا أن تحرقنا.
- المذيعة: كيف يمكننا استخدام الكهرباء بأمان؟
- أميرة : لا تلمسى أبدًا أى شيء كهربي، ويداك مبللة. يجب ألا نضع أى شيء في مقبس الكهرباء، استخدمى الفيش فقط.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Amira is a/an (plumber – mechanic – driver – electrician).
2. She studied and practiced for (one – two – three – four) years.
3. Electricity travels very (slow – fast – sad – happy), close to the speed of light.
4. In a (wind – air – storm – water), we sometimes see a flash of lightning.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Electricity is ...., but we need it.
a) safe b) dangerous c) wet d) slow

2 We should use electricity ....
a) fast b) slowly c) quickly d) safely

3 To make the machine work, put the .... into a socket.
a) bug b) storm c) plug d) hand

4 .... are Ola's new tools.
a) That b) This c) The d) Those

5 Don't touch .... socket. It's dangerous.
a) than b) these c) those d) this

6 .... house over there is very old.
a) They b) These c) That d) Those

7 .... is such a nice place to live in.
a) These b) They c) This d) Those

8 An electrical shock can .... us.
a) travel b) practice c) use d) burn

9 We sometimes see a flash of .... in a storm. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم 2024
a) faucet b) water c) shock d) lightning

10 Never touch anything electrical with .... hands. It's very dangerous. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة الباجور التعليمية 2024
a) cute b) dry c) wet d) small

11 .... are my books.
a) That b) Those c) This d) The

12 .... bird is so near. I can see it well.
a) That b) This c) They d) Those

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

electrician – fast – year – flash – dangerous

Mazen wants to be an ....(1)............ . Electricity is very ....(2)............, so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns that electricity travels very ....(3)............, close to the speed of light. In a storm, we sometimes see a ....(4)............ of lightning.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 This .... (are) a socket. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة المرج التعليمية 2024

2 Look at .... (those) butterfly outside! It's flying away.

3 .... (This) are the plumber's tools. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الزيتون التعليمية 2024

4 This car .... (are) very expensive.

5 Nour found .... (that) shells on the beach last summer.

6 .... (Those) cloud looks like a teddy bear.

7 .... (This) are Noha and Ola. They are my best friends.

8 Can you get .... (those) apple on the cupboard?

9 .... (That) mountains are very high.

10 Let's water .... (this) plants together.

11 .... (This) shoes look very expensive.

12 .... (That) flowers over there are very beautiful.

4 Punctuate the following:

is electricity dangerous محافظة القاهرة – إدارة السلام التعليمية 2023

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

"How to work safely with electricity"

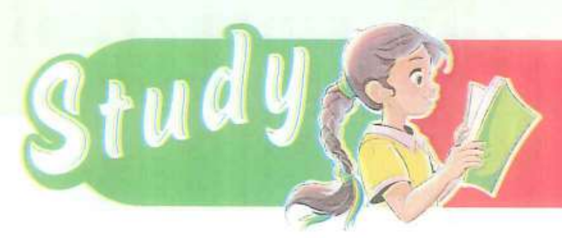
electric shock – only use plugs – wet hands

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





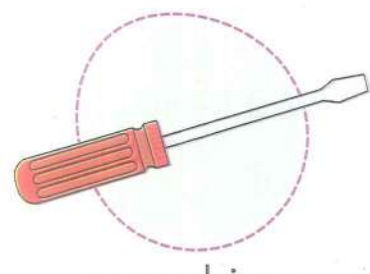
Story



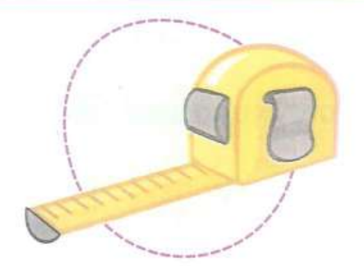
1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



screwdriver
مفك



tape measure
شريط قياس



blocks
مكعبات

Extra vocabulary

cousins	أولاد العم / الخال	different (adj.)	مختلف	child	طفل
curious (adj.)	فضولى/ محب للاستطلاع	radio	راديو	cell phone	هاتف محمول
favorite (adj.)	مفضل	question	سؤال	safety	الأمان
top	قمة	older (adj.)	أكبر سنًّا	little (adj.)	صغير (السن)
doll	دمية	patient (adj.)	صبور	angry (adj.)	غاضب
adults	بالغون	architect	مهندس معمارى	help	مساعدة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
experiment	يجرب	experimented	change	يغير	changed
carry	يحمل	carried	explain	يشرح	explained

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
put	يضع	put	have	يملك / لديه	had
make	يصنع	made	understand	يفهم	understood

Expressions and Phrases

learn about	يتعلم عن	on top of another	واحد فوق الآخر	when she was older	عندما كانت أكبر سنًّا
start making things	يبدأ فى صنع الأشياء	helping people	مساعدة الناس	get angry at	يغضب من
all the time	طوال الوقت	call each other	يتصلون ببعضهم	need some help	يحتاج إلى بعض المساعدة

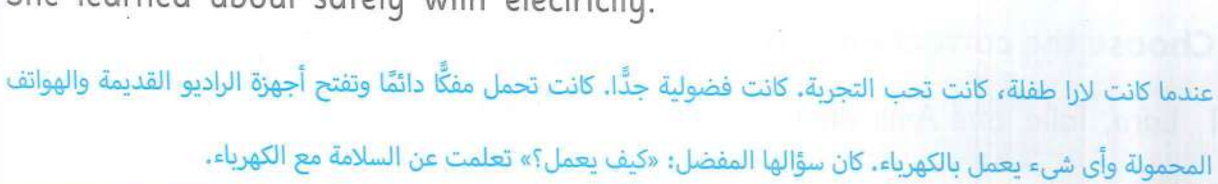
Three cousins ثلاثة أبناء عمومة



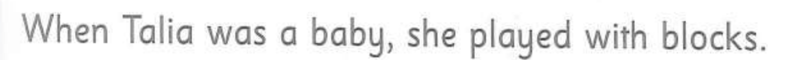
2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was "How does it work?" She learned about safety with electricity.



عندما كانت لارا طفلة، كانت تحب التجربة. كانت فضولية جدًّا. كانت تحمل مفكًّا دائمًا وتفتح أجهزة الراديو القديمة والهواتف المحمولة وأى شىء يعمل بالكهرباء. كان سؤالها المفضل: «كيف يعمل؟» تعلمت عن السلامة مع الكهرباء.



When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil.



عندما كانت تاليا طفلة، كانت تلعب بالمكعبات. كانت تضع مكعبًا فوق الآخر. عندما كبرت، بدأت فى صنع الأشياء. صنعت منزلاً صغيرًا لكلبها وسريرًا لدمية أختها. كانت تحمل دائمًا شريط قياس وقلم رصاص.

Amir was always very patient and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.



Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults, but they still call each other when they need some help.

كان أمير دائمًا صبورًا جدًّا، وكان يحب مساعدة الناس. فى بعض الأحيان، قد يغضب الإخوة الكبار من إخوانهم الصغار، لكن أمير لم يغضب أبدًا. لقد كان يلعب، ويساعد، ويشرح الأمور طوال الوقت. اليوم، لارا وتاليا وأمير جميعهم بالغون، لكنهم ما زالوا يتصلون ببعضهم عندما يحتاجون إلى بعض المساعدة.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Lara, Talia, and Amir are (sisters – brothers – cousins – friends).

2 When Lara was a child, she loved to (play – dance – run – experiment).

3 When Talia was a baby, she played with (blocks – books – dolls – dogs).

4 Amir was always very (sad – angry – patient – hungry) and he liked helping people.

Take care!

نستخدم العلامة الفاصلة (,) لكى نضع قائمة بالأشياء ثم نضع and قبل آخر شىء يتمّ ذكره:

e.g. She opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity.

Language Note

- نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط "past simple tense" للتعبير عن الأحداث التى حدثت وانتهت فى الماضى.
- تذكر أن الماضى البسيط يتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل:

e.g. When I was a child, I loved to experiment.
When we were little, we played with blocks.





B Pronunciation



3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



A syllable is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.
المقطع اللفظى هو جزء من كلمة، ويحتوى على صوت متحرك واحد.

Two-syllable words كلمات ذات مقطعين:



teach-er
مدرس



build-er
عامل بناء



plumb-er
سباك



den-tist
طبيب أسنان



doc-tor
طبيب



driv-er
سائق

Three-syllable words كلمات ذات ثلاثة مقاطع:



me-chan-ic
ميكانيكى



ar-chi-tect
مهندس معمارى

Four-syllable words كلمات ذات أربعة مقاطع:



e-lec-tri-cian
كهربائى

Stress: التأكيد/التشديد:

The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking.
الطريقة التى يتم بها التأكيد على نطق جزء من الكلمة أكثر من الأجزاء الأخرى أثناء التحدث.

Stress on the first syllable الشدة على المقطع الأول			
architect ⟶	ar-chitect	driver ⟶	driv-er
teacher ⟶	teach-er	doctor ⟶	doc-tor
plumber ⟶	plumb-er	dentist ⟶	dent-ist

Stress on the second or third syllable الشدة على المقطع الثانى أو الثالث			
mechanic ⟶	me-chan-ic	collector ⟶	col-lec-tor



CLIL: Math: Dividing numbers



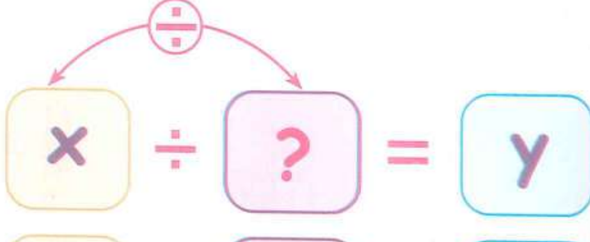
4. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

$x \div y = ?$

$100 \div 50 = 2$

100 divided by 50 is 2



$x \div ? = y$

$100 \div 2 = 50$

100 divided by 2 is 50

e.g. There are 400 children going on a school trip.

Each bus carries 50 students.

How many buses do they need?

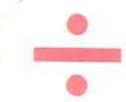
Answer: $400 \div 50 = 8$ buses





Find out!

The symbol (÷) used by the Swiss mathematician – Johann Rahn – is called obelus.



Did you know?

A mathematician works with numbers and math problems.

عالم الرياضيات يعمل مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.





Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 When Ola was a baby, she played with ....

a) dolls b) pets c) sockets d) blocks

2 When she was ...., she started making things.

a) younger b) older c) smaller d) taller

3 She made a house for her ....

a) cat b) rabbit c) dog d) sheep

4 She made a .... for her sister's doll.

a) house b) block c) cell phone d) bed

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hana used the .... to open old radios and cell phones.

a) blocks b) tape measure c) screwdriver d) cousins

2 Amir is always .... He's never angry.

a) careful b) sad c) sorry d) patient

3 My daughter is a/an .... She is eighteen.

a) child b) baby c) adult d) cousin

4 Talia always carried a tape .... and a pencil.

a) measure b) doll c) block d) screwdriver

5 My sister is .... She loves to know everything.

a) patient b) curious c) favorite d) little

6 My father is an electrician. He can fix ....

a) tables b) pipes c) radios d) faucets

7 I use my .... to speak with my friends.

a) blocks b) cell phone c) screwdriver d) tape measure

8 The teacher .... the new lesson very well.

a) explained b) carried c) changed d) opened

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

safety – electricity – electrician – teacher – screwdriver

When Lama was a child, she was very curious. She always carried a ....(1)............ and opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had ....(2)............ . Her favorite question was "How does it work?" She learned about ....(3)............ with electricity. Now, Lama is an ....(4)............ and she loves her job very much.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

When Salma was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Salma when you want to change something in your house.

محافظة الإسماعيلية – إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The text talks about ....

a) Heba b) Mona c) Salma's sister d) Salma

2 When Salma was a baby, she played with ....

a) blocks b) dolls c) cars d) bikes

B Answer the following questions:

3 Do you think Salma can work as an electrician or an architect in the future?

....

4 Why did Salma use the tape measure?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 When Lara .... (is) little, she loved to experiment.

2 Amir .... (help) all his friends when he was young.

3 When my sister .... (is) a child, she played with blocks. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024

4 When Nadia was young, she .... (start) making new things.

5 Dad .... (use) the screwdriver to open the cell phone yesterday.

6 Nour .... (be) never angry when he was little.

6 Punctuate the following:

Lara Talia, and Amir are all adults





Lessons 4 & 5





Writing



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

mail carrier	ساعي البريد	pros	إيجابيات	cons	سلبيات
on the one hand	من ناحية	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	workers	عمال

Extra vocabulary

different (adj.)	مختلف	points	نقاط	outside	بالخارج
great (adj.)	رائع	weather	طقس	fun (adj.)	ممتع
exercise	تمارين	easy (adj.)	سهل	mail bag	حقيبة البريد
heavy (adj.)	ثقيل	paragraph	فقرة	report	تقرير
lights	الأضواء	cleaners	عمال النظافة	children	أطفال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
talk	يتحدث	talked	start	يبدأ	started
connect	يوصل	connected	fix	يصلح	fixed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
get	يحصل على	got	meet	يقابل	met
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	think	يفكر	thought
keep	يحافظ على	kept	bring	يُحضر - يجلب	brought

Expressions and Phrases

What's it like ...?	كيف هو الأمر؟	all day	طوال اليوم	it's not fun	ليس ممتعًا
wake up early	يستيقظ مبكرًا	think about	يفكر في	take away the garbage	يُخرج القمامة

Important sentences جمل هامة

"Pros and cons of being a mail carrier"

Pros (good things)	Cons (bad things)
* Mail carriers get a lot of exercise. يحصل سعاة البريد على الكثير من التمارين. * They are outside all day in good weather. إنهم بالخارج طوال اليوم فى الطقس الجيد. * They speak to a lot of people. يتحدثون إلى الكثير من الناس. * Everyone likes meeting the mail carrier. الجميع يحب مقابلة ساعي البريد.	* Mail carriers are outside all day in bad weather. ساعي البريد بالخارج طوال اليوم فى طقس سيئ. * It isn't an easy job. إنها ليست مهمة سهلة. * The mail bag is heavy and it can give carriers backache. حقيبة البريد ثقيلة ويمكن أن تسبب آلام الظهر لحامليها. * They wake up very early. يستيقظون مبكرًا جدًا.

What are the good and bad things about the job?

ما هى الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة فى الوظيفة؟



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Introduction:



My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're talking about the good and bad things about different jobs. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.



اسمى شريفة. هذا الأسبوع، نتحدث فى الفصل عن إيجابيات وسلبيات وظائف مختلفة. تعمل عمتى ساعية بريد فى أمريكا. لقد تحدثت إليها بخصوص وظيفتها وأخبرتنى ببعض الإيجابيات والسلبيات.

The pros of being a mail carrier:

What's it like to be a mail carrier?
There are some good and bad points about the job.
On the one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.

من جانب، يتواجد سعاة البريد بالخارج طوال اليوم. هذا رائع إذا كان الطقس جيدًا، ولكنه ليس ممتعًا عندما يكون الجو حارًا جدًّا أو باردًا. يسير سعاة البريد طوال اليوم، مما يجعلهم يحصلون على الكثير من التمارين. يرغب الجميع فى تلقى البريد، لذلك يحب الجميع لقاء ساعى البريد.

The cons of being a mail carrier:

On the other hand, there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy. Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

على الجانب الآخر، يوجد بعض السلبيات التى يجب أخذها فى الاعتبار. إنه ليس من السهل العمل كساعى بريد. حقيبة البريد ثقيلة جدًّا. واحدة من السلبيات أيضًا، هى الاستيقاظ مبكرًا للغاية. تبدأ عمتى العمل الساعة ٦ صباحًا.

Check

1 What are they talking about in Sherifa's class this week?

....

2 What is Sherifa's aunt's job?

....

3 Why does everyone like meeting mail carriers?

....



Workers who made our school العمال الذين أنشئوا مدرستنا



3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water.

يقوم السباكون بتوصيل المواسير حتى نحصل على المياه.



The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights.

يقوم الكهربائيون بتوصيل الكهرباء حتى نتمكن من استخدام الأضواء.



The cleaners keep the school clean.

عمال النظافة يحافظون على نظافة المدرسة.



The bus drivers bring the children to school.

سائقو الأتوبيسات يجلبون الأطفال إلى المدرسة.



The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

يقوم جامعو القمامة بأخذ القمامة بعيدًا.



The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

الميكانيكيون يصلحون السيارات والأتوبيسات التى تجلب الأطفال إلى المدرسة.

Check

1 What do the electricians do?

....

2 What do the plumbers do?

....

3 Who brings the children to school?

....



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 "Pros" are the .... points about something.
a) bad b) good c) easy d) difficult

2 One of the .... of being a mail carrier is carrying heavy mail bags.
a) pros b) ants c) cons d) tons

3 Mail carriers work .... all day.
a) at home b) at office c) inside d) outside

4 It's great for the mail carrier when the weather is ....
a) hot b) windy c) cold d) good

5 .... likes meeting the mail carrier.
a) Everybody b) Nobody c) No one d) No people

6 Being a mail carrier is not a/an .... job.
a) good b) important c) easy d) useful

7 There are many .... who made our school.
a) doctors b) teachers c) workers d) students

8 The .... fix the cars and buses that bring children to school.
a) plumbers b) cleaners c) electricians d) mechanics

9 .... keep the school clean.
a) Bus drivers b) Teachers c) Cleaners d) Plumbers

10 The .... help us use lights.
a) cleaners b) doctors c) electricians d) mail carriers

11 The electrician connects .... محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المرج التعليمية 2024
a) bus b) bag c) garbage d) electricity

12 Our .... bring the children to school.
a) garbage collectors b) mechanics
c) plumbers d) bus drivers

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mail carrier – nice – hot – walk – outside

There are some good and bad points about being a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers are ....(1)............ all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very ....(2)............ or cold. Mail carriers ....(3)............ all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes meeting the ....(4)............ .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Tamer. I want to be a mail carrier. But I will be outside all day and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. My brother Ali wants to be an electrician to connect electricity so that people can use lights easily. My friend Maged wants to be a bus driver to bring the children to school. My friend Noha wants to be a mechanic to fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ali wants to be a/an ....

a) engineer b) electrician c) mail carrier d) teacher

2 .... wants to be a mechanic.

a) Tamer b) Maged c) Noha d) Father

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why does Maged want to be a bus driver?

....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

4 Punctuate the following:

1 workers keep the school clean — محافظة الشرقية - إدارة مشتول التعليمية 2024

....

2 what does the bus driver do — محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

"Workers who made our school"

cleaners – plumbers – bus drivers — محافظة أسيوط - إدارة أسيوط التعليمية 2024

....

....

....

....

Unit 5 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

electrician	كهربائى	plumber	سباك
mail carrier	ساعى البريد	mechanic	ميكانيكى
job	وظيفة	wet	مبلل
messy	فوضوى	garbage collector	جامع القمامة
bus driver	سائق الأتوبيس	pipes	مواسير المياه
faucet	صنبور المياه	driving	القيادة
parcel	طرد	trash	قمامة
interesting	مثير للاهتمام	difficult	صعب
different	مختلف	fix	يصلح

Lesson (2)

storm	عاصفة	lightning	برق
dangerous	خطير	plug	فيشة
socket	مقبس الكهرباء	electrical	كهربى
interview	مقابلة شخصية	quickly	بسرعة
safely	بأمان	speed	سرعة
light	ضوء	flash	وميض
huge	ضخم	amount	كمية
energy	طاقة	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
bodies	أجسام	practice	يتدرب
touch	يلمس	repair shop	محل التصليح

Lesson (3)

screwdriver	مفك	tape measure	شريط قياس
blocks	مكعبات	cousins	أولاد العم / الخال
child	طفل	curious	فضولى
radio	راديو	cell phone	هاتف محمول
favorite	مفضل	help	مساعدة
safety	الأمان	little	صغير (السن)
patient	صبور	adults	بالغون
teacher	مدرس	dentist	طبيب أسنان
architect	مهندس معمارى	doctor	طبيب
experiment	يجرب	angry	غاضب

Lessons (4 & 5)

on the one hand	من ناحية	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
workers	عمال	points	نقاط
weather	طقس	outside	بالخارج
great	رائع	exercise	تمرين
mail bag	حقيبة البريد	fun	ممتع
heavy	ثقيل	cleaners	عمال نظافة
children	أطفال	easy	سهل
pros	إيجابيات	cons	سلبيات

Language Focus

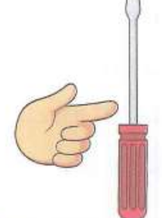
Demonstrative Pronouns

We use Demonstrative Pronouns (this – that – these – those) to say how close an object is to the speaker.

Singular and uncountable nouns

This (near) / That (far)

e.g. This is the electrician's screwdriver.



Plural nouns

These (near) / Those (far)

e.g. Those are the mail carrier's parcels.







Unit 5 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

جامع القمامة	....	ميكانيكى	....
سائق أتوبيس	....	ساعى البريد	....
سباك	....	كهربائى	....
طرد	....	فوضوى	....
مواسير	....	القيادة	....
قمامة	....	صنبور مياه	....

Lesson 2

كهرباء	....	صدمة كهربائية	....
برق	....	مقبس كهرباء	....
فيشة	....	وميض	....
كهربى	....	خطير	....
سرعة	....	ضوء	....

Lesson 3

مفك	....	مدرس	....
شريط القياس	....	طبيب	....
مكعبات	....	طبيب أسنان	....
بالغون	....	مهندس معمارى	....
فضولى	....	أولاد العم	....
صبور	....	هاتف محمول	....

Lessons 4 & 5

سلبيات	....	إيجابيات	....
بالخارج	....	عمال	....
حقيبة بريد	....	طقس	....
ثقيل	....	عمال نظافة	....

WRITING TIME





لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about different jobs:

1. I'm a/an (اسم الوظيفة).
2. I love being a/an (اسم الوظيفة) because (السبب).
3. Sometimes, it's (معلومات عن الوظيفة).
4. I have to (متطلبات الوظيفة).

My job

I'm a plumber. I love being a plumber because I like helping people when they have a big problem. Sometimes, it's wet and messy because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

How to write about electricity:

Answer these questions:

1. Why is electricity interesting?
2. Is electricity dangerous?
3. What happens if we get an electric shock?
4. How can we use electricity safely?

Electricity

Electricity is interesting; it can travel very fast, close to the speed of light. Electricity can also be dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. You should use electricity safely. Never touch electrical things with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket. Use only plugs.

How to write about pros and cons of a job:

1. There are pros and cons for being + اسم الوظيفة.
2. On the one hand, (إيجابيات).
3. On the other hand, (سلبيات).

The pros and cons of being a mail carrier

There are pros and cons for being a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier. On the other hand, the mail bag is very heavy. Another bad thing is that they wake up very early.



Unit 5 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and write:

bus driver – electrician – garbage collector – mail carrier – mechanic – plumber








electrician ....

2 Complete the sentences:

That – These – This – Those



1 Can you see? ....'s the mail carrier. (far)

2 .... is my aunt. Her name is Amira. She's a teacher. (near)




3 .... children are going to school. (near)

4 .... children are watching TV. (far)

3 Change the sentences into plural:

1 This is the faucet in my bathroom.
These are the faucets in my bathrooms.

2 That is the mechanic who fixed my car.
....

3 This is the garbage collector who collects our trash.
....

4 That is the plumber who came to our house.
....







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 There are some pros and cons of being ....
a) a mechanic b) a teacher c) a mail carrier d) a bus driver

2 Mail carriers work .... all day.
a) outside b) inside c) at home d) on boats

3 Mail carriers carry heavy .... as well.
a) letters b) mail bags c) mails d) parcels

4 Mail carriers wake up ....
a) very late b) at night c) at noon d) very early



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 If you have a problem with pipes in your house, you need a ....
a) mail carrier b) plumber c) teacher d) doctor



2 Adel used this .... to open old radios and cell phones.
a) block b) tape measure c) pipe d) screwdriver

3 You need a/an .... to fix the car.
a) bus driver b) builder c) mechanic d) electrician

4 Never put anything into a ...., only use plugs.
a) socket b) car c) radio d) bus

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

give – clean – walks – trash – wet

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة هليوبوليس التعليمية 2024

A garbage collector is outside all the day. He takes away all the ....(1)............, so you can keep your house nice and clean. When it rains, the garbage collector gets ....(2)............, but he is happy because he helps to ....(3)............ the city. He is healthy because he ....(4)............ every day.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

My dad is an electrician. He connects electricity to houses. He helps people use lights, watch TV, and use computers. Electricity is important, but it can harm us, too. My dad knows how to work safely with electricity. He uses a screwdriver and never touches electrical things with wet hands. He never puts anything in a socket.

محافظة الغربية – إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 An electrician is a person who connects ....
a) water b) gas c) electricity d) the internet

2 The underlined word "harm" means ....
a) clean b) hurt c) refresh d) care

B Answer the following questions:

3 What tool does the electrician use? ....

4 How does an electrician help people? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Can you give me .... (these) paper, please?
2 Don't put books on .... (those) shelf. It's far away.
3 .... (That) kites in the sky look beautiful.
4 These .... (is) books.

محافظة المنوفية – إدارة أشمون 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1

why is electricity dangerous

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

"Different jobs"

electrician – plumber

....
....
....
....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



5 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

driver – children – school – cleaner

Adam : Who cleans our ....?

Ali : The .... keeps the school clean.

Adam : And who brings the .... to school?

Ali : The bus ....

2 Read and choose the correct answer:

1 The (mail carrier – electrician – plumber) delivers mails and parcels.

2 (This – These – That) are the plumber's screwdrivers.

3 The (driver – mechanic – plumber) connects pipes and faucets to give us water.

4 Mechanics (play – fix – break) our cars.

5 We use the (tape measure – screwdriver – blocks) to open old radios and cell phones.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 an – Amira – is – electrician.

....

2 can – use – How – safely – we – electricity?

....

3 buses – The mechanic – fixes – cars – and.

....

4 can – Electricity – very – dangerous – be.

....

5 are – These – Ola's – mails – parcels – and.

....




What do you do?

ماذا تعمل؟

Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - read and learn about more jobs.
  - explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.
  - know about prime numbers.
  - distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.
  - learn about words with the prefix "dis-".
  - write about a job he/she wants to do.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يقرأ ويتعلم عن وظائف أكثر.
  - يستكشف ما هى الصناعة وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.
  - يتعرف على الأرقام الأولية.
  - يميز نطق أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة.
  - يتعلم عن الكلمات التى تحتوى على البادئة "-dis".
  - يكتب عن الوظيفة التى يريد أن يعمل بها.

Did you know?

- In 2019, about 13 million *tourists came to Egypt. Tourists can go to different places, including the Pyramids in Giza and the Egyptian Museum in Cairo.

Find out!

- I live in Cairo. People in my city work in different *industries. Some of them work in tourism, and other people work in *education.

*tourists	سياح	*industries	صناعات	*education	التعليم



Lesson 1

What do you do? ماذا تعمل؟





1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary




fisherman
صياد سمك



farmer
مزارع



guide
مرشد



librarian
أمين المكتبة

Extra vocabulary

job	وظيفة	early	مبكرًا	boat	قارب
market	سوق	restaurant	مطعم	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
factory	مصنع	supermarket	سوبر ماركت	tourism industry	مجال السياحة
country	دولة	tourists	سياح	history	تاريخ
interesting (adj.)	مثير للاهتمام	information	معلومات	school library	مكتبة مدرسية
children	أطفال	net	شبكة	transportation	وسائل النقل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pick	يقطف	picked	visit	يزور	visited
work	يعمل	worked	help	يساعد	helped
explain	يشرح	explained	need	يحتاج	needed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	tell	يخبر	told
catch	يمسك	caught	buy	يشترى	bought
sell	يبيع	sold	send	يرسل	sent

Expressions and Phrases

catch fish	يصطاد سمكًا	come back	يعود	all over the world	فى كل أنحاء العالم
all year	على مدار العام	look after	يعتنى بـ	give (trees) water	يروى (الأشجار)
work in + مكان	يعمل فى	work on the sea	يعمل فى البحر	grow food	يزرع الطعام

Important sentences جمل هامة

* A fisherman wakes up early and goes out on his boat to catch fish.
صياد السمك يستيقظ مبكرًا ويخرج فى قاربه ليصطاد السمك.
* A farmer looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients.
يعتنى الفلاح بالأشجار ويعطيها الماء والعناصر الغذائية.
* A guide explains the history of places that tourists visit.
المرشد السياحى يشرح تاريخ الأماكن التى يزورها السياح.
* A librarian looks after books and helps the children find the information they need.
أمين المكتبة يعتنى بالكتب ويساعد الأطفال فى الحصول على المعلومات التى يحتاجونها.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ola is a (student – farmer – librarian – guide). She works in a school library.
2. My father gives the trees water and (oranges – boats – books – nutrients) to grow.
3. Ahmed is a (farmer – librarian – guide – fisherman). He works in the tourism industry.
4. I'm a fisherman. I go on a (car – bus – boat – plane) and catch fish.
5. A (farmer – librarian – guide – fisherman) grows oranges.
6. I want to be a guide. I love to explain the (boat – food – history – nutrients) of different places.

Language Notes

- نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الحقائق والعادات اليومية المتكررة.

He / She / It + مصدر الفعل + (s – es – ies) ...

e.g. He wakes up early every day.

I / They / We / You + مصدر الفعل .... .

e.g. They look after the trees.

- لاحظ تكوين فعل (verb to be) "يكون" فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

I + am	He / She / It + is	We / They / You + are
e.g. I'm a fisherman.	e.g. He is a guide.	e.g. We are farmers.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. A framer (grow – grows – growing – to grow) oranges.
2. Guides (tell – telling – tells – to tell) tourists interesting information.
3. I (am – is – are – be) a librarian.
4. Fishermen (sell – selling – sells – to sell) the fish in the market.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

What jobs do these people do? ما هى الوظائف التى يقوم بها هؤلاء الناس؟



I'm a **fisherman**. I wake up very early every day, and I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

أنا صياد سمك. أستيقظ مبكرًا جدًّا كل يوم، أخرج على قاربى وأصطاد السمك. ثم بعد الظهر، أعود وأبيع السمك فى السوق. أسماكى تذهب إلى المطاعم والمنازل فى جميع أنحاء العالم.



I'm a **farmer**. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.

أنا مزارع. أنا أزرع البرتقال. طوال العام، أعتنى بالأشجار وأعطيها الماء والغذاء. ثم أقطف الثمار. أرسل الكثير من الفاكهة إلى المصنع لصنع عصير البرتقال. أبيع أيضًا بعضًا من البرتقال الخاص بى إلى السوبر ماركت.



I'm a **guide**. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

أنا مرشد أعمل فى مجال السياحة. يأتى الناس إلى بلدى، وتتمثل وظيفتى فى شرح التاريخ وإخبار السياح بالعديد من المعلومات الشيقة حول الأماكن التى يزورونها.



I'm a **librarian**. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

أنا أمين مكتبة. أعمل فى مكتبة مدرسية. وظيفتى هى الاعتناء بكل الكتب. أشترى الكثير من الكتب الجديدة، وأساعد الأطفال فى العثور على المعلومات التى يحتاجون إليها.

Check

1 What does a fisherman do?

....

2 What does a farmer do?

....

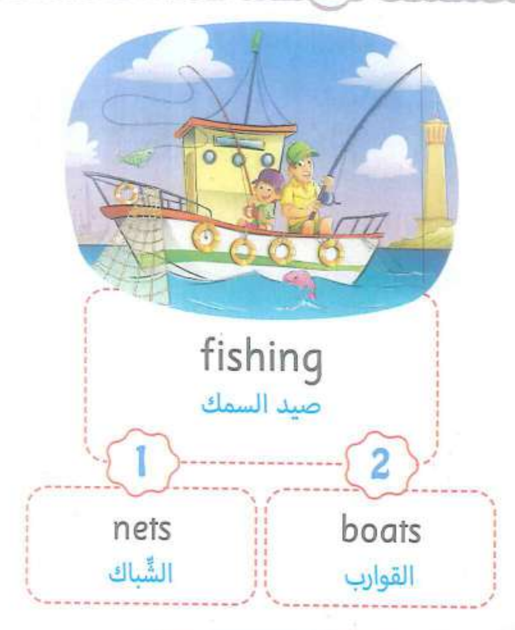
3 In which industry does the guide work?

....



3. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Industries and things connected to them: الصناعات والأشياء المرتبطة بها:



fishing
صيد السمك

1 nets
الشِّباك

2 boats
القوارب



farming
الزراعة

1 animals
الحيوانات

2 trees
الأشجار



tourism
السياحة

1 hotels
الفنادق

2 transportation
وسائل النقل



education
التعليم

1 teachers
المعلمون

2 library
المكتبة

Tip! An industry is a business that produces a specific type of thing or gives a special kind of service.
الصناعة هى الأعمال التجارية التى تنتج نوعًا معينًا من الأشياء أو تقدم نوعًا خاصًّا من الخدمة.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Tourists stay in (farms – schools – hotels – boats).
2 Fishermen use (baskets – books – trees – nets) to catch fish.
3 (Guides – Farmers – Teachers – Fishermen) work in the education industry.
4 (Buses – Nets – Libraries – Hotels) are forms of transportation.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 My dad is a ....
a) plumber b) farmer c) fisherman d) guide

2 He goes out on his .... and catches fish.
a) car b) boat c) bike d) bus

3 He comes back in the .... and sells fish in the market.
a) night b) morning c) evening d) afternoon

4 Dad's fish go to homes all over the ....
a) world b) village c) town d) city

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Cars, buses, and trains are forms of ....
a) foods b) colors c) transportation d) schools

2 Ahmed is a .... He works in the tourism industry.
a) farmer b) librarian c) guide d) fisherman

3 Fishermen use nets and .... to catch fish.
a) animals b) hotels c) schools d) boats

4 My father is a farmer. He works in the .... industry.
a) farming b) fishing c) education d) tourism

5 Habiba is a guide. She works with .... from all over the world.
a) boats b) fish c) tourists d) animals

6 Before you pick the fruit, you give them .... to grow.
a) books b) nutrients c) nets d) hotels

7 A .... works in seas or rivers. He catches a lot of fish.

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة بركة السبع التعليمية 2022

a) plumber b) teacher c) fisherman d) guide

8 .... grow food for us.
a) Farmers b) Teachers c) Doctors d) Vets

9 Teachers work in the .... industry.
a) farming b) tourism c) education d) fishing

10 A farmer sends the fruit to the .... to make orange juice.
a) hotel b) library c) sea d) factory

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

electricity – job – information – library – librarian

محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024

I'm Sherifa. I like books very much. I'm a ....(1)............ . I work in a school ....(2)............ . It's my ....(3)............ to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the ....(4)............ they need. It is an interesting job for me. I like it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

محافظة القاهرة – منطقة الزيتون التعليمية 2024

My name is Mai. My father is a fisherman; he works in the fishing industry. He wakes up very early and goes out on his boat to catch fish. Then, in the afternoon, he comes back and sells his fish. My uncle is a farmer; he works in the farming industry. He looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients. My brother is a guide; he explains the history of the places that tourists visit.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) farmers b) fishermen c) guides d) jobs

2 A .... goes out on his boat and catches fish.
a) farmer b) fisherman c) guide d) teacher

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who explains the history to tourists?
....

4 What does a farmer do?
....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I .... (be) a farmer and I work in the farming industry.
2 My father .... (be) a librarian.
3 They .... (be) guides. They work in the tourism industry.
4 The fisherman .... (wake) up early and goes out on his boat.
5 Mom .... (sell) fish in the market.
6 We .... (sending) the oranges to the factory to make orange juice.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 what do librarians do
....

2 i work in the tourism industry

محافظة القاهرة – إدارة المعادي التعليمية 2024

....



Lesson 2

Science






Story



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

mango tree	شجرة المانجو	renewable	متجدد	non-renewable	غير متجدد
electricity	الكهرباء	energy (adj.)	طاقة	sources	مصادر

Extra vocabulary

sisters	أخوات	beautiful (adj.)	جميل	next to	بجوار / بجانب
children	أطفال	money	نقود	wood	خشب
window	نافذة	seed	بذرة	cons	عيوب / سلبيات
right (adj.)	صحيح (على صواب)	wrong (adj.)	خاطئ	list	قائمة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
play	يلعب	played	worry	يقلق	worried
need	يحتاج	needed	plant	يزرع	planted

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
have	يمتلك	had	cut	يقطع	cut
say	يقول	said	sell	يبيع	sold

Expressions and Phrases

each sister	كل أخت	one day	ذات يوم	cut down a tree	يقطع شجرة
grow bigger	ينمو ويصبح أكبر	look out of the window	ينظر من الشباك	no more wood	لا مزيد من الخشب
don't worry	لا تقلق	grow into ...	ينمو ليصبح ...	run out	ينفد

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Renewable energy sources can grow again or never run out.
مصادر الطاقة المتجددة يمكن أن تنمو مرة أخرى أو لا تنضب أبدًا.

* Wave energy, solar energy, and wind energy are renewable energy sources.
طاقة الأمواج والطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح من مصادر الطاقة المتجددة.

* Oil, coal, and gas are non-renewable energy sources. البترول والفحم والغاز هى مصادر طاقة غير متجددة.

Two Mango Trees شجرتا مانجو



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

1 Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

سارة وملك أختان. كل أخت كانت لديها شجرة مانجو جميلة بجوار منزلها. كل عام تأكل الأختان مانجو جميلة. ويلعب أطفالهما تحت الأشجار.



The middle

2 One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the wood."
She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.
Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes.

قالت ملك ذات يوم: «لست بحاجة إلى مانجو. أحتاج للمال. دعينا أقطع شجرتى. يمكننى بيع الخشب» قطعت الشجرة وباعت الخشب. كانت ملك سعيدة. فى العام التالى، نمت شجرة المانجو الخاصة بسارة بشكل أكبر وأكبر. أعطت الشجرة سارة المزيد من المانجو.

The end

3 Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.
"Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed and it will grow into a big tree."

نظرت ملك من النافذة. لم يكن هناك شجرة مانجو. لم يكن لديها مانجو ولم يعد لديها خشب. قالت سارة: «لا تقلقى»، ازرعى بذرة المانجو هذه، وسوف تنمو لتصبح شجرة كبيرة.».

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful (banana – orange – apple – mango) tree.
2 The children played (on – under – in – inside) the trees.
3 Malak doesn't need mangoes, she needs (wood – juice – money – seeds).
4 When you plant a seed, it will grow into a big (wood – window – tree – money).



Different energy sources مصادر الطاقة المختلفة



3. Listen, point, and say:



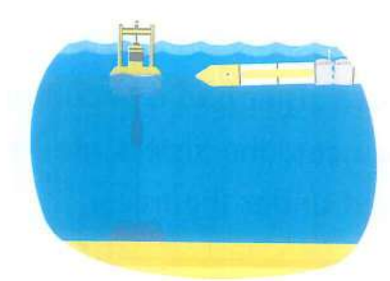


استمع، أشر وقل:

Energy sources مصادر الطاقة



oil
بترول



wave energy
طاقة الأمواج



coal
فحم



solar energy
الطاقة الشمسية



wind energy
طاقة الرياح



gas
غاز

Renewable energy sources مصادر الطاقة المتجددة	Non-renewable energy sources مصادر الطاقة غير المتجددة
wave energy	oil
solar energy	coal
wind energy	gas



Definitions

renewable	can grow again or never run out متجدد: يمكن أن ينمو مرة أخرى أو لا ينفد أبدًا

Check

1 What are the renewable energy sources?

....

2 What are the non-renewable energy sources?

....





Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We can make .... from energy sources.
a) shoes b) videos c) electricity d) fun

2 .... energy is a renewable energy source that comes from the sun.
a) Oil b) Solar c) Wind d) Gas

3 .... energy is clean.
a) Coal b) Gas c) Oil d) Solar

4 I like looking .... of the window.
a) at b) in c) out d) on

5 ".................................." sources can grow again or never run out.
a) Renewable b) Non-renewable c) Wrong d) Right

6 Mango is my favorite .... محافظة الإسكندرية – دمج – إدارة المنتزه أول 2024
a) food b) place c) vegetable d) fruit

7 We get wood from ....
a) seeds b) houses c) trees d) money

8 Coal and oil are .... energy sources.
a) renewable b) non-renewable c) new d) old

9 The chair is made of ....
a) seeds b) wood c) oil d) coal

10 They cut .... the tree yesterday.
a) down b) in c) on d) at

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wind – play – use – electricity – sources محافظة الإسكندرية – إدارة العجمى التعليمية 2024

Renewable energy ....(1)............ are everywhere. Wave, solar, and ....(2)............ energy are renewable energy sources. We can use these sources to make ....(3)............ . There are many things today that ....(4)............ electricity.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ali and Waleed are brothers. Each brother had a beautiful orange tree next to his house. The brothers ate beautiful oranges and their children played under the trees. One day, Waleed decided to sell his tree because he needed money. He cut the wood and sold it. Waleed was happy. Next year, Ali's orange tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Ali more oranges. Waleed looked out of the window. There was no orange tree. He had no oranges and no more wood. Ali helped Waleed plant an orange seed to grow into a big tree.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ali and Waleed are ....

a) sisters b) friends c) classmates d) brothers

2 Each brother had a beautiful .... tree next to his house.

a) orange b) banana c) mango d) strawberry

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why did Waleed decide to cut down his orange tree?

....

4 How did Ali help Waleed?

....

4 Punctuate the following:

1 sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger

....

2 would you cut the mango tree

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

"Renewable and non-renewable energy sources"

solar – oil – coal

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A Story



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary


sun
شمس


ten
عشرة


fish
سمكة


van
شاحنة

Extra vocabulary

characters	شخصيات القصة	fresh (adj.)	طازج	village	قرية
lovely (adj.)	جميل	disappointed (adj.)	محبَط	mechanic	ميكانيكي
engine	محرك	simple (adj.)	بسيط	problem	مشكلة
surprised (adj.)	مندهش	sound	صوت (غير بشرى)	river	نهر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
skim	يقرأ سريعًا	skimmed	start	يبدأ	started
shout	يصيح	shouted	fix	يصلح	fixed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove	teach	يُعَلِّم	taught
can	يستطيع	could	hear	يسمع	heard
get	يحصل على	got	give	يعطى	gave

Expressions and Phrases

drive around	يقود حول	have fun	يستمتع	come and get	تعالَ واحصل على
in front of	أمام	start his van	يجعل شاحنته تعمل	all about cars	كل ما يخص السيارات

Take care!

هناك بعض الأسماء غير المنتظمة التى لا تُجمع بإضافة «s»:

فهناك كلمات المفرد والجمع لها نفس الشكل مثل: fish وكلمات تتغير وتحفظ كما هى: man.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
fish	fish	man	men



لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) ينطق (dʒ) (دج) كما فى (village /engine).



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Fresh Fish Van شاحنة السمك الطازج

The beginning

1 There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish."



هناك صياد عجوز فى قريتى. يقود حول القرية فى شاحنة قديمة. هو يحب عمله ويستمتع بعمله. يصيح قائلًا: "السمك! السمك الطازج! تعال واحصل على أسماكك الطازجة الرائعة".

The middle

2 One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed.
My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help. Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's engine. "It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom. The old fisherman was surprised.

ذات يوم، كان أمام منزلى. لم يستطع تشغيل شاحنته. كان حزينا ومحبطًا. رأت أمى الرجل. كان الجو حارًّا فى الشمس. أرادت أمى المساعدة. كان والد أمى (جدى) ميكانيكيًّا. فقد علمها كل شيء عن السيارات. نظرت إلى محرك الشاحنة القديمة. "إنها مشكلة بسيطة للغاية. أنا أستطيع إصلاحها." قالت أمى. كان الصياد العجوز مندهشًا.

The end

3 Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed! "Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

بعد ذلك، سمعنا صوت المحرك. تم إصلاح شاحنته! قال الصياد «شكرًا». أعطى لأمى عشر سمكات طازجة.

Check

1 What did the old man sell? 

....

2 Why was the old man sad and disappointed? 

....

3 Who could help the old man?

....



B Pronunciation





3. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

a /æ/	e /e/	i /ɪ/	u /ʌ/
van شاحنة	ten عشرة	fish سمكة	sun شمس
sad حزين	fresh طازج	village قرية	fun مرح
man رجل	get يحصل على	his مِلْكه	bus أتوبيس
dad أب	help يساعد	fix يُصلح	cup كوب
can يستطيع	engine محرك	sit يجلس	run يجرى
has يملك	mechanic ميكانيكى	disappointed محبَط	lovely جميل
and و	very جدًّا	it هو/هى لغير العاقل	front أمام
	then ثم	mechanic ميكانيكى	

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I go to school by (cup – bus – sun – run).
2 My father can drive a (fan – can – van – dad).
3 I'm tired. I want to (sit – fix – mix – fish).



4. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



dis = not

The prefix "dis-" means "not".

البادئة "-dis" تعنى "لا".

e.g. dis + agree = disagree   disagree = not agree

The word	Opposite with dis-	Examples
....	disappointed مُحبَط	The boy is disappointed. He didn't pass the test. الولد محبَط. لم ينجح فى الاختبار.
like يحب	dislike لا يحب	She dislikes ice cream. هى لا تحب الآيس كريم.
agree يتفق	disagree لا يتفق	These friends disagree. هؤلاء الأصدقاء لا يتفقون.
obey يطيع	disobey لا يطيع	I'm sorry because I disobeyed my mom. أنا آسف لأننى عصيت أمى.
appear يظهر	disappear يختفى	The rabbit disappeared from the hat. اختفى الأرنب من القبعة.

Check

Read and write the opposites of these verbs:

1 agree × .... 2 like × ....

3 obey × .... 4 appear × ....



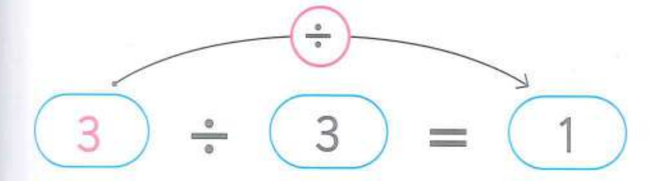
Prime Numbers الأعداد الأولية

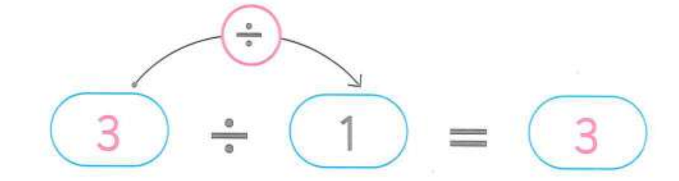


5. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

A prime number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1.
الرقم الأولي هو رقم لا يمكنك قسمته إلا على نفسه و ١.

e.g. 2, 3, 5, etc. مثل ٢، ٣، ٥ ...





e.g. **Add the numbers and tell if the answer is a prime number:**

37 + 20 = 57

57 ÷ 57 = 1 57 ÷ 1 = 57

(57) is a prime number.

44 + 2 = 46

46 ÷ 46 = 1 46 ÷ 2 = 23

(46) isn't a prime number.



Find out!

– The smallest prime numbers are (2 – 3 – 5 – 7 – 11 – 13 – 17 – 19 – 23 and 29).

أصغر الأعداد الأولية هي: (2 - 3 - 5 - 7 - 11 - 13 - 17 - 19 - 23 - 29).

– (1) isn't a prime number because it can only be divided by one number which is itself.

(1) ليس عددًا أوليًّا؛ لأنه لا يمكن تقسيمه إلا على رقم واحد، وهو نفسه.



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 There is a fisherman in my ....
a) city b) town c) village d) street

2 He drives around the village in an old ....
a) car b) train c) van d) truck

3 He sells lovely fresh ....
a) fish b) dish c) meat d) fruits

4 Everyone in the village .... his fresh fish.
a) disobey b) disagree c) likes d) dislikes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The old .... sells fresh fish.
a) mom b) grandpa c) mechanic d) fisherman

2 The old man .... around the village in an old van.
a) walks b) shouts c) drives d) swims

3 I was .... when I couldn't find my book.
a) happy b) disappointed c) excited d) interested

4 I can't start the van. The .... doesn't work.
a) fish b) engine c) job d) village

5 Grandpa was a .... He could fix cars.
a) farmer b) fisherman c) guide d) mechanic

6 The old man was .... when my mom fixed the engine.
a) disappointed b) sad c) worried d) surprised

7 Nour .... ice cream. She never eats it.
a) likes b) dislikes c) disagrees d) disobeys

8 Where is my cat? It .... somewhere.
a) disappeared b) disagreed c) disliked d) disappointed

9 A: I think pizza is the best food ever. B: No, I .... with you.
a) agree b) dislike c) disagree d) obey

10 Manal was sorry because she .... her teacher.
a) obeyed b) liked c) agreed d) disobeyed



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

village – surprised – disappointed – engine – fish

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العجوزة التعليمية 2024

There was an old fisherman in our village. He drove around the ....(1)............ in an old van. He sold fresh ....(2)............ . Everyone liked his fresh fish. One day, he was ....(3)............ because he couldn't start the van. Mom fixed the ....(4)............ and helped the old man.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

There was an old fisherman who liked his job. He drove around the village in an old van. One day, he couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. My grandpa saw the man. It was hot in the sun. He wanted to help. He looked at the old van's engine. It was a very simple problem. He fixed the engine. The fisherman was surprised and happy. He gave my grandpa ten fresh fish.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The fisherman was .... because he couldn't start his van.
a) sad b) surprised c) happy d) fresh

2 The underlined word "simple" means ....
a) hard b) big c) easy d) young

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who fixed the van?

....

4 Why was the fisherman happy at the end?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 We shouldn't .... (obey) our parents.

2 Hossam .... (likes) fish. He never eats it.

3 Ola was .... (appointed) when she lost the race.

4 The two sisters always .... (agree). They never agree.

5 My keys .... (appeared). Can you help me find them?

6 Punctuate the following:

1 it's a very simple problem

....

2 The fisherman couldn t start his van

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة أبو حماد التعليمية 2024

....



Lessons 4 & 5



A Writing





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

teacher	مدرس	students	طلاب	surprising (adj.)	مفاجئ
patient (adj.)	صبور	class	فصل	respect	احترام
cleaner	عامل نظافة	bus driver	سائق الأتوبيس	librarian	أمين المكتبة

Extra vocabulary

people	أشخاص	the best (adj.)	الأفضل	world	العالَم
different (adj.)	مختلف	questions	أسئلة	lives	حيوات (جمع حياة)
hours	ساعات	exciting (adj.)	شيق	role	دور/ مهمة عمل
trash	قمامة	carefully	بحذر	shelf	رف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
answer	يجيب	answered	ask	يسأل	asked
change	يغير	changed	listen	يستمع	listened
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	respect	يحترم	respected

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
learn	يتعلم	learnt	show	يظهر	showed
teach	يُعَلِّم	taught	throw	يلقى	threw
know	يعرف	knew	say	يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

want to be	يريد أن يكون	for me	بالنسبة لى	the best job in the world	أفضل وظيفة فى العالم
For a teacher, ...	بالنسبة للمدرس، ...	hard work	عمل شاق	ready to learn	جاهز للتعلم
show respect	يظهر الاحترام	get off the bus	ينزل من الأتوبيس	put ... back	يُعيد شيئًا ما إلى مكانه

Definitions

patient	صبور	someone who doesn't get angry easily	شخص لا يغضب بسهولة
respect	احترام	when you are polite and kind	عندما تكون مهذبًا وعطوفًا





2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

What are the good and bad things about being a teacher?
ما هى الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة فى كونك مدرسًا؟



When people ask me, "What do you want to do?" I answer: "I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world".

عندما يسألنى الناس، "ماذا تريد أن تعمل؟" فأجيب: "أنا أريد أن أصبح معلمًا. بالنسبة لى، إنها أفضل وظيفة فى العالم".

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting.

بالنسبة للمعلم، كل يوم مختلف. يسأل الطلابُ دائمًا أسئلة مفاجئة. يمكن للمعلم أن يغير حياة طلابه؛ لذلك يحتاج المعلمون أن يكونوا صبورين للغاية. إنهم يعملون لساعات عديدة كل يوم... إنه عمل شاق، لكنه شيق.

Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

يحتاج المعلمون إلى التفكير بسرعة. إنهم بحاجة إلى تشجيع طلابهم. المعلم الجيد مستعد دائمًا للتعلم. يقوم المعلمون بتعليم طلابهم، ولكن الطلاب يقومون أيضًا بتعليم معلميهم. كل فرد فى الفصل يعرف أشياء مختلفة.



Important sentences جمل هامة

* For a teacher, every day is different. — بالنسبة للمدرس، كل يوم مختلف.
* Students always ask surprising questions. — يسأل الطلاب دائمًا أسئلة مفاجئة.
* Teachers can change their students' lives. — يمكن للمدرسين تغيير حياة طلابهم
* Teachers need to think quickly. — يحتاج المدرسون إلى التفكير بسرعة.
* It's hard work, but it's exciting. — إنه عمل شاق، ولكنه شيق.



What is "respect"? ما هو "الاحترام"؟



3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Think. How do we show respect to the people around us?

فكر. كيف نظهر الاحترام لمن حولنا؟

How to show respect
كيفية إظهار الاحترام



I respect the cleaner.
I don't throw trash.
أنا أحترم عامل النظافة. أنا لا أرمى القمامة.



I respect the teacher.
I listen to him carefully.
أنا أحترم المعلم. أستمع إليه بعناية.



I respect the bus driver.
I say thank you when I get off the bus.
أنا أحترم سائق الأتوبيس. أقول: شكرًا لك عندما أنزل من الأتوبيس.



I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the shelf.
أنا أحترم أمين المكتبة. أضع كتبى فى مكانها على الرف.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I respect the (teacher – librarian – cleaner – driver). I don't throw trash.

2 I say thank you when I (think – learn – walk – get off) the bus.

3 I listen to my teacher (slowly – carefully – lovely – quickly).

4 I respect the librarian. I put my (food – books – drinks – bags) back on the shelf.





Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It's hard work, but it's ....
a) bad b) exciting c) boring d) difficult

2 For teachers, every day is ....
a) boring b) similar c) the same d) different

3 A good teacher can change students' ....
a) books b) lives c) trash d) questions

4 Good teachers need to .... their students.
a) know b) learn c) encourage d) think

5 Teachers need to think ....
a) slowly b) quickly c) nearly d) hardly

6 A good teacher should be very ....
a) surprising b) different c) exciting d) patient

7 We should show .... to the people around us.
a) teachers b) students c) questions d) respect

8 I respect the cleaner. I don't .... trash.
a) eat b) throw c) buy d) sell

9 I say thank you to the .... when I get off the bus.
a) bus driver b) librarian c) teacher d) cleaner

10 I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the ....
a) bag b) bus c) shelf d) school

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

change – surprising – easy – patient – encourage

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask ....(1)............ questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to ....(2)............ their students. They need to be very ....(3)............ . They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can ....(4)............ their students' lives.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

We show respect to younger people. We show respect to older people. We show respect to men and women. We show respect to rich and poor people. I respect the teacher. I listen to him carefully. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw litter. I show respect to the people around me. I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus. I respect the dentist. I listen to his/her advice.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العجوزة التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) dentist b) teacher c) respect d) cleaner

2 We .... respect to the bus driver.

a) eat b) hop c) show d) jump

B Answer the following questions:

3 How do we show respect to the teacher?

....

4 Is it important to show respect to the people around us?

....

4 Punctuate the following:

1 i listen to my teacher carefully

....

2 what job do you want to have

محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة العجمي التعليمية 2024

....

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

"My favorite job"

What do you want to be?
Why do you choose this job?
Why do you like this job?

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 6 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

fisherman	صياد سمك	farmer	مزارع
guide	مرشد سياحى	librarian	أمين مكتبة
boat	قارب	market	سوق
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	restaurant	مطعم
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	factory	مصنع
country	دولة	tourists	سياح
tourism industry	مجال السياحة	history	تاريخ
information	معلومات	farming	الزراعة
fishing	صيد السمك	education	التعليم

Lesson (2)

mango tree	شجرة المانجو	renewable	متجددة
non-renewable	غير متجددة	energy	طاقة
sources	مصادر	electricity	كهرباء
beautiful	جميل	money	نقود
wood	خشب	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
wave energy	طاقة الأمواج	wind energy	طاقة الرياح
coal	فحم	oil	بترول
gas	غاز	seed	بذرة

Lesson (3)

sun	شمس	ten	عشرة
fish	سمك	van	شاحنة
village	قرية	lovely	جميل
fresh	طازج	mechanic	ميكانيكى
surprised	مندهش	engine	محرك
disappointed	محبَط	sound	صوت (غير بشرى)
problem	مشكلة	simple	بسيط
disagree	لا يتفق	disobey	يعصى
dislike	لا يحب	disappear	يختفى



Lessons (4 & 5)

teacher	مدرس	surprising	مفاجئ
patient	صبور	students	طلاب
class	فصل	respect	احترام
cleaner	عامل نظافة	bus driver	سائق أتوبيس
world	العالَم	the best	الأفضل
different	مختلف	questions	أسئلة
lives	حيوات	hours	ساعات
trash	قمامة	exciting	مثير للاهتمام
carefully	بحذر	shelf	رف

Language Focus

The Present Simple Tense

- نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الحقائق والعادات اليومية المتكررة.

He / She / It + مصدر الفعل + (s / es / ies) ...

e.g. He wakes up early every day.

I / They / We / You + مصدر الفعل ... .

e.g. They look after the trees.

- لاحظ تكوين فعل (verb to be) "يكون" فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

I + am

e.g. I'm a fisherman.

He / She / It + is

e.g. He is a guide.

We / They / You + are

e.g. We are farmers.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

مزارع	....	التعليم	....
مرشد	....	صيد السمك	....
الزراعة	....	صياد سمك	....
أمين مكتبة	....	السياحة	....
تاريخ	....	معلومات	....
سوق	....	عناصر غذائية	....
مصنع	....	مطعم	....

Lesson 2

مصادر الطاقة غير المتجددة	....	مصادر الطاقة المتجددة	....
الفحم	....	الطاقة الشمسية	....
البترول	....	طاقة الرياح	....
الغاز الطبيعى	....	طاقة الأمواج	....
شجرة مانجو	....	خشب	....
كهرباء	....	بذرة	....

Lesson 3

سمك	....	عشرة	....
شمس	....	شاحنة	....
طازج	....	قرية	....
ميكانيكى	....	مندهش	....
محرك	....	محبَط	....
لا يتفق	....	يعض	....
لا يحب	....	يختفى	....

Lessons 4 & 5

مدرس	....	عامل نظافة	....
صبور	....	رف	....
مفاجئ	....	طلاب	....
احترام	....	سائق أتوبيس	....

WRITING TIME






لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a job:

- I'm (الوظيفة).
- I work in the (مجال الصناعة) industry.
- I (ما يقوم به من أعمال).
- All year, I (أعمال دائمة فى مجال الصناعة).
- I also (أعمال إضافية).

"A farmer"

I'm a farmer. I work in the farming industry. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees, and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.

How to write about energy sources:

- There are + أنواع مصادر الطاقة.
- Renewable energy sources + تعريف مصادر الطاقة المتجددة.
- أمثلة لمصادر الطاقة المتجددة + are renewable energy sources.
- أمثلة لمصادر الطاقة غير المتجددة + are non-renewable energy sources.
- We can use energy sources to + استخدامات مصادر الطاقة.

"Energy sources"

There are renewable and non-renewable energy sources. Renewable energy sources can grow again or never run out. Wave, solar, and wind are renewable energy sources. Oil, gas, and coal are non-renewable energy sources. We can use energy sources to make electricity.

How to write about a job you want to do:

- I want to be (اسم الوظيفة).
- I want to be (اسم الوظيفة) because (أسباب العمل بتلك الوظيفة).
- A good (اسم الوظيفة) should (مهام يجب القيام بها).

"A job you want to do"

I want to be a teacher. I want to be a teacher because every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives. A good teacher should be very patient. Teachers need to think quickly. A good teacher is always ready to learn.



Unit 6 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER



يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 In which industries do these people work?

1

......fishing......

2

....

3

....

4

....

5

....

6

....

2 Read and match:

patient – respect – renewable

1 Things that grow again: ....
2 When you are polite and kind: ....
3 Someone who doesn't get angry easily is ....

3 What do these people do? Read and complete:

1 Mechanics ......fix...... cars.
2 Dentists .... teeth.
3 Fishermen .... fish.
4 Garbage collectors .... garbage.
5 Mail carriers .... the mail.
6 Teachers .... students.
7 Farmers .... food.

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 6







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. Seleem is a ....
   a) cleaner b) farmer c) fisherman d) teacher
2. He looks after the .... and gives them nutrients.
   a) books b) classes c) students d) trees
3. He picks the ....
   a) fruit b) vegetable c) meals d) crops
4. He sends a lot of fruit to the .... to make juice.
   a) school b) farm c) factory d) park

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. Someone who doesn't get angry easily is ....
   a) disappointed b) patient c) surprised d) fresh
2. .... industry needs teachers and librarians.
   a) Farming b) Education c) Fishing d) Tourism
3. When you are polite and kind, you show ....
   a) right b) respect c) wrong d) renewable
4. We like our .... We meet him every day at school.
   محافظة المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء التعليمية 2024
   a) teacher b) mechanic c) electrician d) cleaner

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

teacher – be – doctor – am – family

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2024

I live with my ....(1).......... in a small town. My father is a ....(2).......... . He works in a hospital. My mother is a ....(3).......... at my school. My brother likes to open old cell phones to know how they work. He wants to ....(4).......... an engineer when he is older.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

My name is Hussein. My uncle is a fisherman. He wakes up very early every day. He catches a lot of lovely fresh fish. In the afternoon, my uncle goes home with a lot of fish. He sells some fish in the market. He cooks some fish and eats his lunch. My uncle likes his job because it's fun. I want to be a fisherman when I grow up. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السيدة زينب التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My uncle is a/an ....

a) fisherman b) engineer c) teacher d) farmer

2 The opposite of the underlined word "sell" is "............................".

a) give b) study c) take d) buy

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Hussein's uncle sell his fish?

....

4 What does Hussein want to be when he grows up?

....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 My father .... (be) a librarian and he loves books.

2 Amina .... (not likes) candies. She likes fruits.

3 He .... (working) for many hours every day.

4 The book .... (appeared) and I couldn't find it.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

I m a fisherman محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

مجاب عنه صفحة 287

"A librarian"

school – information

....

....

....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

information – guide – history – tourists

Reem : Do you like being a ....?

Mr. Hany : Yes, I do. I learn a lot about ....

Reem : Do you meet many .... every day?

Mr. Hany : Yes, and I tell them a lot of interesting ....

2 Read and choose the correct answer:

My name is Sara. I'm an English teacher. I teach children. I love teaching; it's very exciting. Students are very smart. They ask surprising questions, so I need to think quickly. I like to encourage my students. I have to be very patient with them and encourage them.

1 Sara is a/an (math – Arabic – English – science) teacher.
2 Sara teaches (adults – babies – old – children).
3 Teaching is very (exciting – boring – hard – polite).
4 Students are very (old – smart – young – noisy).
5 Students ask (surprising – difficult – big – easy) questions.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 help – find – Librarians – children – information.

....

2 fisherman – surprised – old – The – was.

....

3 works – The guide – the – tourism industry – in.

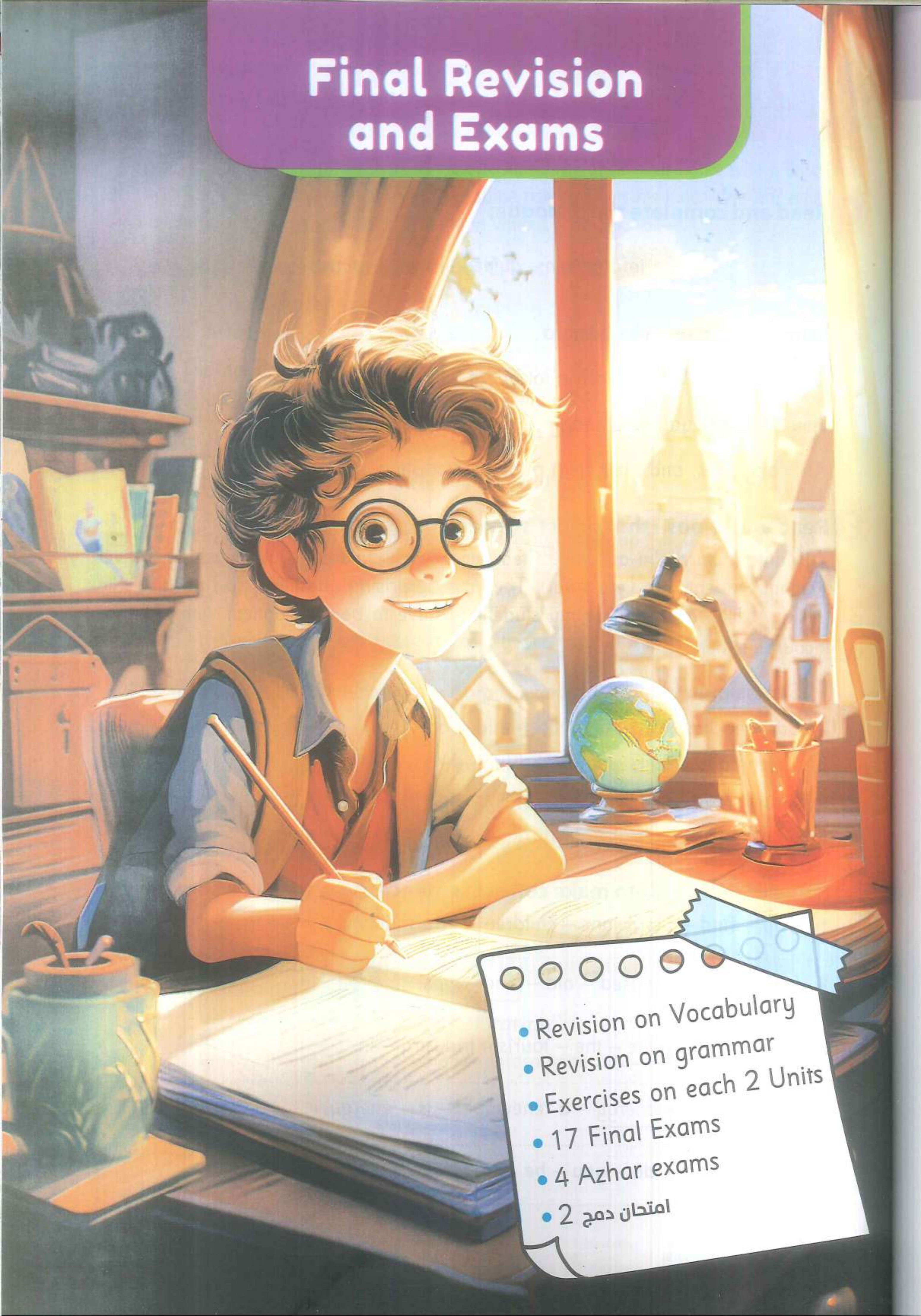
....

4 source – Wave energy – a renewable – is – energy.

....

5 want – What – do – you – be – to?

....


Final Revision and Exams
• Revision on Vocabulary
• Revision on grammar
• Exercises on each 2 Units
• 17 Final Exams
• 4 Azhar exams
• 2 امتحان دمج

Units 1&2



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

food	طعام	watermelon	بطيخ	produce	ينتج
emperor	إمبراطور	Damietta	دمياط	chicken	لحم دجاج
ready	جاهز	healthy	صحى	gardener	جنايني / بستاني
governorate	محافظة	grapes	عنب	special	خاص/ مميز
unhealthy	غير صحى	palace	قصر	rich in	غنى بـ
milk	لبن	farmers	مزارعون	cola	مياه غازية
honest	صادق/ أمين	nutrients	مواد غذائية	onions	بصل
country	دولة	candy	حلوى	empty	فارغ
wheat	قمح	rice	أرز	grow	يزرع/ ينمو
wheelchair	كرسى متحرك	dead	ميت	guavas	جوافة
potatoes	بطاطس	raise	يربى (للماشية)	scientist	عالم
China	الصين	fishermen	صيادو السمك	bananas	موز
lunch	وجبة الغداء	milkshake	مشروب لبن مخفوق	important	هام
catch	يمسك/ يصطاد	mangoes	مانجو	breakfast	وجبة الإفطار
folktale	قصة شعبية	win	يفوز	Domiati cheese	جُبْنٌ دمياطى
sugarcane	قصب السكر	vegetables	خضراوات	competition	مسابقة
land	أرض	famous	مشهور	sheep	أغنام

Unit 2

animals	حيوانات	claws	مخالب	ugly	سيئ/ قبيح
surprised	متفاجئ	birds	طيور	beak	منقار
amazing	مذهل	hungry	جائع	lizards	سحالى
river	نهر	delicious	لذيذ	juicy	كثير العصارة
insects	حشرات	bear	دب	large	كبير الحجم
control	يتحكم	fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك	paw	قدم الحيوان
beautiful	جميل	mice	فئران	crocodile	تمساح
helpful	مساعد/ مفيد	perfect	مثالى/ ممتاز	flat	مسطح
snake	ثعبان	cute	لطيف	noisy	مزعج
sand	رمال	spider	عنكبوت	huge	ضخم/ هائل
surprising	مدهش	grass	حشائش	camel	جمل
scary	مخيف	strong	قوى	fur	فرو
horse	حصان	scared	خائف	clothes	ملابس
pelican	بجعة	dangerous	خطير	angry	غاضب
hump	سنام الجمل	rhim gazelle	غزال الريم	horns	قرون الحيوان
the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	coat	فراء الحيوان	North Africa	شمال إفريقيا
heat	حرارة	thick	سميك	protect	يحمى



on Vocabulary Units 1&2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We .... rice and lemon in our country. محافظة الجيزة - الشروق 2024

a) raise b) grow c) drink d) play

2 Farmers grow tomatoes and .... محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024

a) onions b) candy c) cake d) chickens

3 .... are kinds of vegetables. محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024

a) Oranges b) Tomatoes c) Apples d) Grapes

4 Farmers .... chickens to get eggs and meat. محافظة دمياط - إدارة زرقا 2024

a) eat b) raise c) grow d) drink

5 Omar is really .... He never lies.

a) honest b) important c) hard d) dead

6 A/An .... is someone who is like a king.

a) palace b) emperor c) gardener d) cleaner

7 The emperor lives in a .... محافظة القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر 2024

a) hospital b) school c) tent d) palace

8 I won the football .... last week.

a) company b) office c) competition d) plant

9 Damietta is an Egyptian ....

a) river b) desert c) mountain d) governorate

10 The land in Damietta is rich in ....

a) trash b) litter c) nutrients d) games

11 Fishermen .... thousands of fish in the sea.

a) play b) catch c) water d) cut

12 Crocodiles are very .... محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

a) dangerous b) cute c) nice d) happy

13 Farmers like spiders because they eat .... محافظة القاهرة - المقطم 2024

a) insects b) fruits c) birds d) crops

14 Camels live in the .... محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024

a) sea b) lake c) river d) desert

15 .... are perfect for the desert. محافظة القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر 2024

a) Sharks b) Bears c) Camels d) Pelicans

16 Camels can live without .... for a long time. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

a) clothes b) water c) fur d) feet

17 The desert is .... at night. محافظة الجيزة - الشروق 2024

a) hot b) strong c) cold d) sunny

18 Horses eat grass and drink .... water. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

a) sad b) fresh c) salt d) dirty

19 The .... is a bird. محافظة القاهرة - عين شمس 2024

a) pelican b) bear c) fox d) camel

20 The bear lifts its .... to catch the fish.

a) hand b) arm c) paw d) coat

21 The fennec fox's thick .... keeps it warm. محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024

a) mouth b) fur c) beak d) wing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A raise – delicious – sugarcane – ugly – chickens

Egyptian farmers are very important to us. They produce many things for us. They can grow rice, potatoes, tomatoes, and ....(1)......... . Farmers in Egypt also ....(2)......... animals such as; goats, sheep, cows, and chickens. We can get meat and eggs from ....(3)......... . Egyptian vegetables and fruits are very ....(4)......... .

B raise – shoot – produce – grow – food القاهرة - إدارة شرق التعليمية 2024

Egyptian farmers are clever. Lots of the ....(1)......... we eat every day comes from our country. Farmers ....(2)......... rice, potatoes, and tomatoes in Egypt. Egyptian farmers ....(3)......... chickens, sheep, cow, and many other animals. Farmers ....(4)......... many things that we can buy from the shops or the supermarkets. Egypt is our great country.

C beautiful – ears – water – horns – grass البحيرة 2024

Rhim gazelles are ....(1)......... animals. They have big ....(2)......... and long ....(3)......... . They eat ....(4)......... . They have yellow-white coats. They live in the Sahara Desert. They can live without water for a long time.

Units 1&2



B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 1

Conjunctions الروابط

and We use "and" to join two similar ideas.

نُستخدم «and» لربط فكرتين متشابهتين.

I play basketball and I play football in the park.
(play basketball) / (play football)
فكرتان متشابهتان ويكملان بعضهما.

but We use "but" to join two contrasting ideas.

نستخدم «but» لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

He trained well for the race, but he didn't win.
(trained well) / (didn't win)
فكرتان مختلفتان وعكس بعضهما.

Unit 2

Comparative adjective صفات المقارنة

A) Short adjectives:

short adjective + er + than

الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، يضاف لها (r) وبعدها (than):

e.g. Running is safer than climbing.

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (er) وبعدها (than):

e.g. The car is faster than the bike.

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاف لها (er) بعدها (than) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:

e.g. My room is bigger than your room.

الصفات المنتهية بحرف الـ (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها (ier) وبعدها (than):

e.g. English is easier than French.

B) Long adjectives:

more + long adjective + than

e.g. Cairo is more crowded than Alexandria.





on Grammar Units 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It is a very interesting restaurant, ... it is very expensive.
a) but b) and c) so d) because

2 I like playing tennis, ... I can't play it well. محافظة القاهرة - عين شمس 2024
a) because b) and c) so d) but

3 I like eating ice-cream .... chocolate cake.
a) but b) so c) and d) that

4 Sara likes sports. She practices basketball, ... she walks to school every day.
a) nor b) although c) and d) but

5 She is quite short, ... she likes playing basketball.
a) because b) so c) and d) but

6 Ahmed has a lot of money, ... he isn't happy.
a) so b) because c) and d) but

7 My house is old. I want to .... it.
a) replay b) reorder c) repaint d) rewrite

8 My teacher told me to .... my homework.
a) redo b) reclean c) replay d) repaint

9 He can speak English .... Arabic.
a) but b) so c) and d) because

10 The rice wasn't good, my mother wanted to .... the rice.
a) repaint b) remake c) reorder d) rewrite

11 The snake is .... than the elephant.
a) thin b) thinner c) thinnest d) the thinner

12 Snakes are .... dangerous than mice.
a) more b) most c) the most d) as

13 I think cats are .... than dogs. محافظة القاهرة - المقطم 2024
a) nice b) nicer c) nicest d) the nicest

14 The elephant is bigger .... the lion.
a) the b) than c) more d) less

15 The plane is .... than the train.
a) faster b) fast c) fastest d) more fast

16 The crocodile is .... the snake.
a) bigger b) more big c) bigger than d) biggest

17 Cats are more .... dogs.
a) beautiful b) beautiful than c) as beautiful d) than

18 The bear is .... the pelican.

a) more strong b) stronger c) strong than d) stronger than

19 That bear is .... than all other bears.

a) kinder b) a kind c) kind d) more kind

20 The fennec fox is smaller .... the tiger.

a) as b) then c) than d) the

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I like meat .... (and) I don't like fish. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الساحل 2024

2 Salma likes healthy food .... (but) she exercises every day. محافظة القاهرة - الوايلي 2024

3 After school, I do my homework, ... (but) I eat my dinner. محافظة القاهرة - حلوان 2024

4 I need to eat burgers .... (or) it isn't healthy. محافظة القاهرة - البساتين 2024

5 Let's .... (eating) lunch. محافظة المنوفية - الزيتون 2024

6 We have breakfast .... (on) the morning. محافظة الإسكندرية- إدارة العجمى 2024

7 I play tennis .... (but) football. محافظة القاهرة - المرج 2024

8 I like fresh juice, ... (and) I don't like cola. محافظة القاهرة - الزيتون 2024

9 I like fruits .... (but) vegetables. محافظة القاهرة - السلام 2024

10 I .... (painted) my house yesterday. I did it again. محافظة القاهرة - السلام 2024

11 Rhim gazelles are .... (beautiful) than camels.

12 Dogs are smaller .... (then) elephants. محافظة القاهرة - حلوان 2024

13 The train is .... (slow) than the car.

14 The rose lives .... (long) than the daisy. محافظة الإسكندرية - العجمى 2024

15 How .... (long) is a horse? It's 400 kg.

16 Laptops are .... (expensive) than mobiles.

17 Snakes are more dangerous .... (then) birds.

18 A fennec fox is .... (small) than a camel. محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024

19 The bear is .... (strong) than the pelican. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

20 Camels are .... (tall) than horses. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

21 A snake is .... (dangerous) than a fox. محافظة القاهرة - المرج 2024

22 All cars are .... (fast) than bikes. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

23 I think the cat is .... (nice) than the dog. محافظة القاهرة - الزيتون 2024

24 My house is .... (large) than your house. محافظة القاهرة - السلام 2024

25 Horses .... (drinks) fresh water every day. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون 2024



Units 3&4



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3

plant	نبات	become	يصبح	eggplant	باذنجان
weather	الطقس	seed	بذرة	lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
maize	ذرة	difficult	صعب	shoot	نبتة
tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء	rain	مطر	first	أولًا
flower	زهرة / وردة	bean plant	نبات الفول	lake	بحيرة
after that	بعد ذلك	soil	تربة زراعية	reed	القصب
farm	مزرعة	next	التالى	root	جذر
acacia	شجرة الأكاسيا	polluted air	هواء ملوث	finally	فى النهاية
leaf	ورقة شجرة	orange tree	شجرة البرتقال	rainwater	مياه الأمطار
papyrus	نبات البردى	balcony	شرفة (بلكونة)	sunflower	زهرة عباد الشمس
dry	جاف	process	عملية	inside	بالداخل
rose	وردة	a billion	مليار	Nile Delta	دلتا النيل
awesome	رائع	daisy	زهرة اللؤلؤ	the United States	الولايات المتحدة
paper	ورق	germination	عملية الإنبات	agricultural	زراعى
noise	ضوضاء	sandals	صنادل	water	مياه
habitat	بيئة / موطن	crops	محاصيل	Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين

Unit 4

kitchen	مطبخ	village	قرية	Take the second right.	خذ المنعطف الثانى على اليمين.
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة	bedroom	حجرة النوم	the Nile	نهر النيل
on the corner	فى الزاوية (على الناصية)	Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	bathroom	الحمام
couch	أريكة	on the left	على اليسار	bazaar	بازار
living room	حجرة المعيشة	supermarket	سوبرماركت	on the right	على اليمين
beach	شاطئ	dining room	حجرة الطعام	shopping mall	مول تجارى
directions	اتجاهات	Sahl Hasheesh	سهل حشيش	map	خريطة
post office	مكتب البريد	tourist boat	قارب سياحى	east	شرق
apartment	شقة	office	مكتب	summer	فصل الصيف
south	جنوب	houseboat	منزل عائم	hospital	مستشفى
Chinese	اللغة الصينية	safaris	رحلات سفارى	tent	خيمة
Go straight ahead.	اتجه للأمام مباشرة.	places	أماكن	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
cloth	قماش	turn right	انعطف يمينًا	world	العالم
check	يفحص/ يراجع	street	شارع	turn left	انعطف يسارًا
save	ينقذ	kind	طيب / عطوف	interesting	ممتع



on Vocabulary Units 3 & 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Tomatoes have .... inside. (محافظة القاهرة - السلام 2024)

a) ropes b) seeds c) shoots d) leaves

2 The land was very .... There wasn't any water in it. (محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024)

a) dry b) wet c) green d) good

3 Farmers work in the .... habitat. (محافظة القاهرة - المرج 2024)

a) desert b) lakes c) agricultural d) rivers

4 Roots grow .... the soil. (محافظة القاهرة - الزيتون 2024)

a) on b) above c) under d) next

5 A lotus flower needs lots of water so it grows near the ....

a) lakes b) deserts c) gardens d) roofs

6 There is not much rain in the .... (محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024)

a) river b) desert c) lake d) sea

7 Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make .... (محافظة القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر 2024)

a) wood b) paper c) cotton d) food

8 The air in big cities is .... because of factories and cars. (محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024)

a) fresh b) polluted c) pollution d) clean

9 We can .... in our bedroom. (محافظة القاهرة - السلام 2024)

a) relax b) play c) eat d) cook

10 The tent is made of .... (محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024)

a) wood b) glass c) grass d) cloth

11 We cook food in the .... (محافظة القاهرة - المعصرة 2024)

a) bathroom b) kitchen c) bedroom d) balcony

12 I live on a .... because I love living on water. (محافظة الجيزة - الشروق 2024)

a) tent b) cave c) house d) houseboat

13 People in the desert live in a .... (محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024)

a) boat b) balcony c) tent d) ship

14 We buy clothes and shoes at the .... mall. (محافظة دمياط - إدارة زرقا 2024)

a) office b) school c) shopping d) bank

15 We go to the .... when we feel sick.

a) kitchen b) post office c) supermarket d) hospital

16 .... right. The park is on the left. محافظة القاهرة - العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة 2024

a) Turn b) Take c) Talk d) Learn

17 I like sitting on the .... to see the whole street. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

a) kitchen b) bathroom c) dining room d) balcony

18 A .... is where we learn. محافظة القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر 2023

a) park b) school c) post office d) hospital

19 A .... is the place where we send letters.

a) shopping mall b) post office c) park d) hospital

20 We always have showers in the ....

a) kitchen b) bedroom c) bathroom d) living room

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A noise – plant – water – farm – desert

I live on a ....(1)......... with my family. We ....(2)......... millions of seeds to keep the farm green. We always use the Nile to ....(3)......... the seeds. We grow many fruits. I like living on the farm. I don't like the polluted air and the ....(4)......... in the city.

B seed – sunlight – grows – red – shoot الشرقية - إدارة الحسينية 2024

We put a ....(1)......... in soil. The seed needs ....(2)......... and water so it can grow. The seed ....(3)......... roots under the soil. Then it grows a ....(4)......... and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

C tourists – places – world – between – boats

Ahmed lives on a boat in the summer. His father works on tourist ....(1)........., so he travels up and down the Nile. He likes the summer. He sees many interesting ....(2)......... and he meets people from all over the ....(3)......... . He speaks English and Chinese with the ....(4)......... .

D under – house –next – behind – between الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس 2024

My name is Zain. I live in a village ....(1)......... to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is ....(2)......... a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees ....(3)......... the house. I love my ....(4)......... .

Units 3&4  B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 3

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

A) Short adjectives:

the + short adjective + est

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (est):

e.g. Giraffes are the tallest animals.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، يضاف لها (st):

e.g. Hala is the nicest girl in my family.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف (y) ويضاف لها (iest):

e.g. Elephants are the heaviest animals.



الصفات المنتهية بحرف (ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاعف الحرف الأخير ويضاف (est):

e.g. Summer is the hottest season.

B) Long adjectives:

the most + long adjective

e.g. Egypt is the most beautiful country in the world.

Unit 4

1. Prepositions of place: ظروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان:

on على	in في/ داخل	under تحت	above فوق/ على
next to بجوار	between بين	behind خلف	in front of أمام

2. Asking about places: للسؤال عن الأماكن نستخدم:

Where + is + the place (المكان)?

e.g. A: Where is the park?
B: It's next to my school.



on Grammar Units 3&4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The elephant is the .... animal.
a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) a big

2 The spider is the .... dangerous animal.
a) more b) most c) much d) many

3 The rhim gazelle is .... most beautiful animal.
a) the b) than c) then d) a

4 Ali is the .... in his class. محافظة القاهرة - عين شمس 2024
a) tall b) tallest c) taller d) most tall

5 Hurghada is .... beautiful city in Egypt.
a) more b) the most c) the more d) as

6 He had the .... suitcase.
a) heavy b) heaviest c) heavier d) a heavy

7 I think that the red flower is the .... colorful flower.
a) less b) more c) most d) little

8 The sunflower lives the ....
a) long b) longer c) longest d) longer than

9 Roses are .... colorful flowers.
a) most b) more c) the most d) less

10 They are .... cleverest students.
a) that b) more c) the d) than

11 My house is .... the red house and the orange house.
a) under b) next c) between d) across

12 The tent is .... the car.
a) next to b) in front c) between d) next

13 There are 4 chairs .... the balcony.
a) on b) next c) in d) between

14 There is a new television .... the wall.
a) next b) between c) on d) in front

15 My house is .... the hospital and the park. محافظة القاهرة - المقطم 2024
a) in b) next c) between d) in front of

16 The supermarket is .... the corner.
a) in b) on c) of d) at

17 My house is next .... the bank.
a) on b) to c) of d) in

18 My school is .... of the hospital.
a) next b) in front c) above d) behind

19 The birds are flying .... the trees.
a) next b) in front c) above d) between

20 A: .... is the supermarket? B: It is next to the school.
a) Who b) Which c) Where d) When

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Crocodiles are the .... (dangerous) animals.
2 My school is the .... (big) school in town.
3 The giraffe is the .... (tall) animal. محافظة القاهرة - الساحل 2024
4 The red flower is the .... (more) beautiful. محافظة القاهرة - البساتين 2024
5 We have the .... (old) car in the village.
6 Our team is the .... (better) in the school. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024
7 Sunflowers are beautiful, but roses are the .... (more) beautiful flowers.
8 The school is in front .... (to) the library.
9 The school is .... (at) the left. محافظة القاهرة - السلام 2024
10 Put your books .... (on) your bag.
11 The couch is .... (in) two chairs.
12 The cat is hiding .... (between) the door.
13 Where .... (is) the Pyramids? محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024
14 The office is next .... (two) the hospital. محافظة القاهرة - المرج 2024
15 The tent is next .... (at) the car. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024
16 I always sleep .... (on) my bedroom. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024
17 The park is .... (under) the school and hospital. محافظة القاهرة - الوايلى 2024
18 A: .... (Who) is the hospital? B: Next to the school. محافظة الإسكندرية - العجمى 2024
19 This sunflower lives the .... (long). محافظة الإسكندرية - العجمى 2024
20 The tree is .... (under) to my house. محافظة القاهرة - الساحل 2024
21 Fish live .... (on) water.
22 The tent is .... (on) front of the car. محافظة القاهرة - البساتين 2024
23 The shopping mall is .... (next) of Mona's house. محافظة القاهرة - البساتين 2024
24 There is a hotel .... (between) to my school. محافظة القاهرة - حلوان 2024
25 I go to (hospital) .... to learn. محافظة القاهرة - الوايلى 2024

Units 5&6 A) Revision on Vocabulary



Unit 5

job	وظيفة	trash/garbage	قمامة	plug	فيشة
adults	بالغين	electrician	كهربائى	young	صغير السن
lightning	البرق	curious	فضولى	plumber	سباك
different	مختلف	socket	مقبس الكهرباء	architect	مهندس معمارى
mechanic	ميكانيكى	fix	يصلح	electrical	كهربى
patient	صبور	mail carrier	ساعى البريد	collect	يجمع
safety	أمان	experiment	يجرب	garbage collector	جامع القمامة
drive	يقود	flash	وميض	carry	يحمل
bus driver	سائق أتوبيس	wait	ينتظر	speed	سرعة
explain	يشرح	pipes	مواسير	bring	يحضر
burn	يحرق	pros × cons	إيجابيات × سلبيات	faucet	حنفية
parcels	طرود	screwdriver	مفك	on the one hand	من ناحية
wet	مبلل	storm	عاصفة	tape measure	شريط قياس
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	difficult	صعب	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
blocks	مكعبات	fun	ممتع	easy	سهل
heavy	ثقيل	mail bag	حقيبة البريد	outside	بالخارج

Unit 6

fisherman	صياد	information	معلومات	non-renewable	غير متجدد
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	guide	مرشد	pick	يقطف
money	نقود	gas	غاز	librarian	أمين المكتبة
explain	يشرح	electricity	الكهرباء	village	قرية
farmer	مزارع	catch	يصطاد	wood	خشب
teacher	مدرس	restaurant	مطعم	look after	يعتنى بـ
sources	مصادر	fresh	طازج	tourism industry	مجال السياحة
boat	قارب	mango tree	شجرة المانجو	engine	محرك
history	التاريخ	hotels	فنادق	oil	بترول
disappointed	محبط	nutrients	عناصر غذائية	transportation	النقل
wave energy	طاقة الأمواج	sound	صوت (غير بشرى)	market	سوق
education	التعليم	coal	فحم	shout	يصيح
factory	مصنع	renewable	متجدد	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
students	طلاب	patient	صبور	encourage	يشجع
respect	يحترم	van	شاحنة	carefully	بحرص / حذر
shelf	رف	show	يظهر	different	مختلف



on Vocabulary Units 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The plumber fixes the pipes and .... محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

a) faucets b) electricity c) parcels d) lights

2 The electrician connects .... محافظة القاهرة - المرج 2024

a) bus b) bag c) garbage d) electricity

3 "Pros" are the .... points about something.

a) bad b) good c) easy d) difficult

4 .... catch a lot of fish in the sea. محافظة القاهرة - الزيتون 2024

a) Fishermen b) Postmen c) Doctors d) Teachers

5 It is dangerous to touch anything electrical with .... hands.

a) dry b) wet c) fast d) two

6 We sometimes see a flash of .... in a storm. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

a) faucet b) water c) shock d) lightning

7 She loves to experiment. She is ....

a) lazy b) sad c) curious d) bad

8 My friend is very patient. He is never ....

a) hungry b) angry c) happy d) small

9 I can't lift these .... bags because my arms are weak.

a) light b) heavy c) tiny d) easy

10 A mail carrier .... your parcels. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

a) connects b) drives c) delivers d) puts

11 The garbage collectors take away our .... محافظة القاهرة - دار السلام 2024

a) water b) trash c) food d) drinks

12 He works with tourists. He is a .... محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024

a) plumber b) guide c) doctor d) farmer

13 A farmer .... the trees and give them water.

a) drinks b) looks for c) looks like d) looks after

14 Teachers and librarians work in the .... industry.

a) tourism b) fishing c) farming d) education

15 Tourism industry needs ....

a) factories b) teachers c) transportation d) libraries

16 A fisherman sells fish in the ....

محافظة دمياط - إدارة زرقا 2024

a) zoo b) school c) market d) museum

17 I show .... to the teacher. I listen to him carefully.

a) anger b) respect c) shelf d) photos

18 Never put anything into a ...., only use plugs.

a) table b) sock c) socket d) box

19 A plumber .... faucets.

محافظة الجيزة - الشروق 2024

a) cleans b) takes away c) fixes d) drives

20 We .... the sound of the engine.

محافظة القاهرة - السلام 2024

a) grow b) drive c) hear d) draw

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A screwdriver – safety – experiment – electricity – dangerous

When my cousin was a child, she loved to ....(1)......... . She was very curious. She always carried a ....(2).............., and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had ....(3)............ . She learned about ....(4)............ with it. I like her so much.

B farmer – fresh – van – village – fisherman

I met an old man in our ....(1)......... last week. He was a ....(2)......... . He drove around the village in an old ....(3)......... . He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely ....(4)......... fish. I bought some fish for my mother.

C older – put – house – job – tape measure

إدارة الحوامدية 2024

When Hana was a baby, she played with blocks. She ....(1)......... one block on top of another. When she was ....(2)......... , she started making things. She made a little ....(3)......... for her dog and a bed for her doll. She always carried a ....(4)......... and a pencil.

D throw – driver – trash – listen – get – electrician

محافظة دمياط - إدارة فارسكور 2024

We should show respect to the people around us. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw the ....(1)......... in the street. I respect the teacher. I ....(2)......... to him carefully. I respect the bus ....(3)......... . I say thank you when I ....(4)......... off the bus.





Demonstrative pronouns أسماء الإشارة

For singular or uncountable nouns: للأسماء المفردة أو الأسماء التى لا تعد:

This	That
تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود قريب.	تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود بعيد.
e.g. This is my dad's car. (near)	e.g. That is my school over there. (far)

For plural nouns: للأسماء الجمع:

These	Those
تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.	تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.
e.g. These are the plumber's tools. (near)	e.g. Those are my mom's bags. (far)

Unit 6

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

- نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الحقائق والعادات اليومية المتكررة.

He / She / It + مصدر الفعل + (s – es – ies) ... .

e.g. He works on a boat.

I/ They / We / You + مصدر الفعل.... .

e.g. Guides explain history to tourists.

- لاحظ تكوين فعل "يكون" فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

I + am

e.g. I'm a farmer.

He / She / It + is

e.g. He is a fisherman.

We / They / You + are

e.g. They are teachers.



on Grammar Units 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 This .... my ball.
a) is b) am c) are d) aren't

2 .... are the electrician's screwdrivers.
a) This b) Those c) The d) That

3 He always uses .... red pen for writing.
a) those b) this c) these d) then

4 We need to use .... tape measure.
a) that b) these c) those d) than

5 Those .... my parcels.
a) is b) are c) isn't d) was

6 .... is my English book.
a) This b) These c) The d) Those

7 .... birds are flying in the sky.
a) These b) Those c) This d) That

8 .... is the water dripping from the faucet.
a) These b) Those c) That d) The

9 A farmer .... a lot of vegetables every year.
a) growing b) grows c) grew d) grow

10 Mail carriers walk all day and .... a lot of exercise.
a) gets b) got c) getting d) get

11 I .... a guide. I work in the tourism industry.
a) am b) is c) are d) do

12 The librarian .... in a school library.
a) works b) work c) working d) are working

13 She doesn't .... mangoes.
a) need b) needs c) to need d) needed

14 A good teacher .... always ready to learn.
a) are b) is c) am d) were

15 She always .... the cleaner.
a) respect b) respects c) respected d) respecting

16 Teachers .... for many hours.
a) works b) working c) work d) is working

17 Sara .... like being a mail carrier.
a) isn't b) aren't c) don't d) doesn't

18 They .... go to the cinema.
a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) aren't

19 .... she like to be a nurse?
a) Does b) Do c) Is d) Were

20 What .... they want to do?
a) do b) does c) is d) are

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 .... (Those) is my house.
2 .... (That) are her sunglasses.
3 My mother made .... (these) cake for us.
4 .... (This) shoes are nice.
5 We can use .... (these) map to get to the museum.
6 This .... (are) a socket. محافظة القاهرة - المرج 2024
7 .... (This) are the plumber's tools. محافظة القاهرة - الزيتون 2024
8 These .... (is) books. محافظة المنوفية - أشمون 2024
9 She .... (not like) ice cream. She doesn't eat it.
10 .... (These) is my book. It's in my hand. محافظة القاهرة -الساحل 2024
11 .... (That) mountains are very high. محافظة القاهرة -البساتين 2024
12 .... (This) cars are very old. محافظة القاهرة - الوايلى 2024
13 These children .... (is) watching TV. محافظة القاهرة - حلوان 2024
14 This .... (are) a socket. محافظة القاهرة - السلام 2024
15 Salem .... (isn't) grow lemon.
16 He .... (sell) fresh fish at the market.
17 What .... (do) she want to be?
18 .... (Does) Ahmed and Sara watch the television at night?
19 A .... (teach) is a person who teach pupils. المنيا - بني مزار 2024
20 Ali (live) .... in Hurghada. محافظة القاهرة - عين شمس 2024
21 My sister .... (watch) a movie every day. محافظة القاهرة - القاهرة الجديدة 2024
22 When my brother .... (is) a child, he played with toys. القاهرة - الشروق 2024
23 They .... (works) as guides.
24 He .... (be) a teacher in my school.
25 She .... (like) eating pizza. محافظة المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
raise	يربى	raised	produce	ينتج	produced
walk	يمشى	walked	practice	يتدرب	practiced
talk	يتحدث	talked	love	يحب	loved
play	يلعب	played	want	يريد	wanted
live	يعيش	lived	try	يجرب	tried
plant	يزرع	planted	happen	يحدث	happened
work	يعمل	worked	water	يروى	watered
look	ينظر	looked	like	يحب	liked
control	يتحكم	controlled	use	يستخدم	used
help	يساعد	helped	carry	يحمل	carried
cross	يعبر	crossed	stop	يتوقف	stopped
reach	يصل إلى	reached	lift	يرفع	lifted
open	يفتح	opened	protect	يحمى	protected
need	يحتاج	needed	weigh	يزن	weighed
die	يموت	died	decide	يقرر	decided
start	يبدأ	started	germinate	ينبت	germinated
face	يواجه	faced	drop	يتساقط	dropped
relax	يرتاح	relaxed	organize	ينظم	organized
move	ينتقل / يتحرك	moved	learn	يتعلم	learned
visit	يزور	visited	turn	ينعطف	turned
fix	يصلح	fixed	hope	يأمل	hoped
wait	ينتظر	waited	arrive	يصل	arrived
collect	يجمع	collected	study	يذاكر	studied
travel	يسافر	traveled	touch	يلمس	touched
experiment	يجرب	experimented	change	يغير	changed
explain	يشرح	explained	connect	يوصل	connected
pick	يقطف	picked	shout	يصيح	shouted
ask	يسأل	asked	encourage	يشجع	encouraged
respect	يحترم	respected	listen	يستمع	listened

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع	made	come	يأتى	came
grow	ينمو	grew	eat	يأكل	ate
think	يعتقد	thought	drink	يشرب	drank
go	يذهب	went	give	يعطى	gave
say	يقول	said	win	يفوز	won
bring	يحضر	brought	take	يأخذ	took
feel	يشعر	felt	see	يرى	saw
hear	يسمع	heard	lose	يفقد	lost
find	يجد	found	become	يصبح	became
buy	يشترى	bought	put	يضع	put
begin	يبدأ	began	do	يفعل	did
can	يستطيع	could	send	يرسل	sent
be (am / is / are)	يكون	was / were	drive	يقود	drove
forget	ينسى	forgot	know	يعرف	knew
get	يحصل على	got	burn	يحرق	burnt
tell	يخبر	told	meet	يقابل	met
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
catch	يمسك	caught	sell	يبيع	sold
have	يمتلك	had	cut	يقطع	cut
teach	يدرس	taught	sit	يجلس	sat
run	يجرى	ran	throw	يرمى/ يلقى	threw

Final Exams

الامتحانات معدلة طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات



Exam 1 محافظة القاهرة- إدارة عين شمس

30





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Camels are very .... in Egypt.
a) dangerous b) hard c) small d) important

2 Camels can .... people.
a) eat b) sell c) carry d) grow

3 Camels' milk is ....
a) bad b) delicious c) spicy d) salty

4 We can use Camels' fur to make ....
a) tables b) food c) clothes d) juice

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 A .... is the place where we send letters.
a) shopping mall b) hospital c) park d) post office

2 The roots grow under the ....
a) shoot b) flower c) soil d) board

3 The .... is a bird.
a) pelican b) bear c) fox d) camel

4 When I was young, I used the .... to open the old radios.
a) screwdriver b) pencil c) tape measure d) box

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

school – like – teacher – village – Nile

My friend Mariam lives in a big city. It is bigger than my ....(1).......... . Her house is near the ....(2).........., so she can see the river all day. Mariam's father is a ....(3).......... . He works in a ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... catch thousands of fish.
a) Teachers b) Farmers c) Engineers d) Fishermen

2 The underlined word "good" means ....
a) bad b) awful c) nice d) old

B Answer the following questions:

3 What can farmers grow in Damietta? ....

4 Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1 Ali .... (live) in Hurghada.

2 The fennec fox is .... (small) than other foxes.

3 I .... (paint) my house yesterday. I did it again.

4 I .... (do) eat candy, but I eat fruit.

6 Punctuate the following: 1

that is the mail carrier's bag

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Egyptian farmers"

grow rice – raise chickens

....

Exam 2 محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 A plumber .... faucets.
a) cleans b) takes away c) fixes d) drives

2 An electrician connects .... to homes.
a) water b) garbage c) houses d) electricity

3 .... takes away all the garbage.
a) A plumber b) A garbage collector
c) A bus driver d) An electrician

4 A bus driver takes .... to school.
a) children b) horses c) dogs d) food

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 We .... rice and lemon in our country.
a) raise b) grow c) drink d) play

2 The desert is .... at night.
a) hot b) strong c) cold d) sunny

3 Horses like to drink .... water.
a) hot b) dirty c) salt d) fresh

4 I live on a/an .... because I love living on water.
a) tent b) apartment c) house d) houseboat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

sand – without – perfect – water – feet

Camels are ....(1)....... for the desert as they have large flat ....(2)......., so they can walk on the sand. They can also live ....(3)....... water for a long time. Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the ....(4)....... from coming in.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Shahd lives in a city called Hurghada. Hurghada is a beautiful city. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It is a big city and about 190,000 people live there. In Hurghada, there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt on the Red Sea.

a) north b) south c) east d) west

2 Hurghada is a ....

a) city b) country c) village d) sea

B Answer the following questions:

3 How many people live in Hurghada? ....

4 Summarize the paragraph in one sentence. ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 A cat is small, ... (and) the horse is big.

2 Elephants are .... (big) than dogs.

3 The post office is next .... (two) the library.

4 When my brother .... (is) a child, he played with toys.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

what did you do yesterday

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My House"

living room – bedroom

....

....

....

Exam 3 محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الدقى 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 The lion is very ....

a) bad b) strong c) weak d) good

2 It lives in the ....

a) desert b) forest c) sea d) lake

3 The lion has four ....

a) legs b) eyes c) hands d) fingers

4 It's .... and brown.

a) red b) yellow c) green d) blue

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The fennec fox lives in the .... of North Africa.

a) deserts b) rivers c) rainforests d) farms

2 When there is a storm, we see a flash of ....

a) water b) sky c) sun d) lightning

3 I show .... to the teacher. I listen to him carefully.

a) photos b) respect c) shelf d) anger

4 A .... catches a lot of fish and works on the sea.

a) fisherman b) doctor c) teacher d) farmer

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

balcony – between – family – in front of – watch

We live in a big house near the sea. We have a big ....(1).......... . We put flowers in it. Our house is ....(2).......... the post office and the hospital. We sit and ....(3).......... TV in the living room. We are a happy ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Camels are very helpful. They carry things and people in the desert. They can live without water for a long time. Horses are helpful too. They are very fast and they can carry heavy things, too. Horses can live up to thirty years, while camels can live up to forty years. Horses and camels are good for the desert.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) gazelles   b) horses   c) camels   d) camels and horses

2 Horses can live up to .... years.

a) thirty   b) twelve   c) forty   d) ten

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where do camels live? ....

4 How are camels and horses helpful? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 The cat is .... (small) than the lion.

2 Those doctors .... (is) working in the hospital.

3 Ahmed is the .... (tall) boy in the class.

4 I don't eat candy, ... (and) I like fruit.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

what do you want to be

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Being healthy"

- fruit and vegetables
- exercise and do sports

....

....

....

Exam 4 محافظة الجيزة – إدارة شمال الجيزة 30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 The family have .... together.

a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snack

2 Maged thinks the food is ....

a) bad b) delicious c) not good d) unhealthy

3 Farmers grow .... in Egypt.

a) rice b) chicken c) goat d) plastic

4 They raise animals like ....

a) rice b) chickens c) cats d) plastic

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 A/An .... is someone who is like a king.

a) teacher b) farmer c) emperor d) vet

2 Crocodiles are very ....

a) cute b) nice c) dangerous d) sad

3 The fennec fox lives in the ....

a) sea b) desert c) sky d) trees

4 "...................." is a very special plant.

a) Paper b) Papyrus c) Sandal d) Soil

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

supermarket – school – room – play – post office

I love my house. It is big. My grandparents live with us. I can ....(1).......... with my brother and sister in our garden. My favorite room is the living ....(2).......... . We go to the ....(3).......... to buy food. We go to ....(4).......... to learn.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

I'm Adam. I like sports. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm on a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I'm healthy. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I like to play with my friends in the park. We go to the park on Fridays. My dad is a scientist. He likes looking at animals and plants.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Adam wants to drink more ....

a) milk b) water c) tea d) juice

2 Adam's dad is a ....

a) scientist b) doctor c) farmer d) teacher

B Answer the following questions:

3 When does Adam go to the park? ....

4 Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 The mouse is .... (small) than the cat.

2 I like football, ... (and) I don't like tennis.

3 This .... (are) a boy.

4 My house is .... (on) front of you.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

the horses have large eyes .

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Living on a boat"

tourist – travel

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 I read a story ....

a) today b) yesterday c) tomorrow d) Friday

2 The emperor lived in a nice ....

a) apartment b) house c) palace d) farm

3 There will be a/an .... to choose the next emperor.

a) information b) competition c) germination d) education

4 He gave a .... to each gardener.

a) flower b) meal c) seed d) banana

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The bear lifts its .... to catch the fish.

a) coat b) nose c) paw d) arm

2 "Honest" means someone who doesn't ....

a) lie b) play c) plant d) win

3 Fishermen use .... to catch fish.

a) hotels b) trees c) nets d) animals

4 Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....

a) wood b) paper c) cotton d) food

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

pipes – lights – garbage – electrician – big

We have a ....(1).......... house. A ....(2).......... collector takes away all garbage. An ....(3).......... connects electricity, so we can use lights. A plumber connects the ....(4).........., so we can have water. We like our house very much.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient, too. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) houses b) families c) teachers d) environment

2 The underlined word "hard" means ....

a) easy b) difficult c) fast d) slow

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do students always ask? ....

4 What can a teacher change? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 The bear is .... (strong) than the pelican.

2 .... (These) apples are on the tree. I can't get them.

3 I respect the cleaner. I don't .... (throwing) trash.

4 When I was little, I .... (play) with blocks and dolls.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

ahmed's father works in the farming industry

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Animals in Egypt"

spiders – crocodiles

....

....

....

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Mona works at the ....

a) bank b) school c) hospital d) supermarket

2 We see Mona when we buy ....

a) wood b) food c) clothes d) books

3 Mona checks the food is ....

a) fresh b) dirty c) salty d) ugly

4 Mona is very .... and happy.

a) rude b) busy c) kind d) bad

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 I live in a/an .... It's made of cloth.

a) houseboat b) apartment c) tent d) house

2 The rhim gazelles have long ....

a) horns b) wings c) feathers d) beaks

3 The .... takes you to school.

a) electrician b) mechanic c) plumber d) bus driver

4 Plants in the .... don't need much water.

a) sea b) desert c) river d) lake

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

cheese – fishermen – Life – farmers – catch

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The ....(1).......... can grow rice, wheat, and guavas. Fishermen..........(2).......... thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati ....(3).......... is very delicious. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. ....(4).......... is good in Damietta.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



There are many jobs we can do. They are all important. They help us to have a better life. An electrician connects the electricity. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean. Mail carriers deliver letters and parcels. The bus driver helps us go to school on time. The mechanic fixes cars and buses.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) electricity b) jobs c) water d) children

2 A .... helps you keep your home clean.

a) farmer b) builder c) plumber d) garbage collector

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does an electrician do? ....

4 How is the plumber's work important? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Crocodiles are .... (dangerous) than the spiders.

2 The pink house is .... (on) the red house and the yellow house.

3 These .... (is) the plumber's tools.

4 I eat healthy food .... (because) I exercise.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

how old are you

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My apartment"

family – rooms

....

....

....

....



Exam 7 محافظة القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة التعليمية





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a) soil b) plants c) seeds d) flowers
2. We can take the seeds to .... new tomatoes.
   a) sell b) grow c) buy d) speak
3. The .... grow under the soil.
   a) branches b) leaves c) flowers d) roots
4. The flowers become .... tomato fruits.
   a) yellow b) red c) blue d) black

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. Some birds have long .... They use them to eat.
   a) pens b) beaks c) peas d) horns
2. The .... fixes pipes and faucets.
   a) mechanic b) electrician c) plumber d) garbage collector
3. Teachers need to .... their students.
   a) work b) sell c) encourage d) write
4. Basketball is my favorite ....
   a) drink b) sport c) juice d) food

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

between – next – learn – clothes – shopping mall

My name is Gana. I live in Shoubra with my family. I have only one brother. There is a ....(1).......... in my street. I buy ....(2).......... and shoes from it. It's ....(3).......... to my school where I ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Last weekend, Younis and his family took a boat down the Nile. They listened to music and were happy. Younis saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river. The child shouted "Please help me!". Younis called his dad who saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child. The child smiled and thanked Younis' father for saving him. Younis was very happy, but he decided to learn to swim.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Younis .... swim.

a) could b) couldn't c) was d) is

2 The child thanked Younis' father for .... him.

a) selling b) calling c) playing with d) saving

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did they enjoy on the boat? ....

4 Who fell into the river? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 I want to play football, ... (and) my leg hurts.

2 The bear is .... (big) than the cat.

3 .... (This is) the plumber's tools.

4 My city is the .... (nice) place to live.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

Dalia can speak english

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Camels"

without water - flat feet

....

....

....

Exam 8 محافظة المنوفية – إدارة أشمون التعليمية 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Ahmed is .... years old.

a) 10 b) 11 c) 12 d) 9

2 Ahmed lives in ....

a) Luxor b) Giza c) Sinai d) Damietta

3 He plays ....

a) tennis b) volleyball c) football d) basketball

4 Ahmed's father is a ....

a) farmer b) carpenter c) doctor d) vet

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 .... are kinds of vegetables.

a) Oranges b) Tomatoes c) Apples d) Grapes

2 A crocodile is a .... animal.

a) small b) tiny c) little d) huge

3 A/An ".................... " is a place where I buy clothes and shoes.

a) hospital b) office c) school d) shopping mall

4 Rhim gazelles eat ....

a) plants b) eggs c) meat d) rice

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

behind – kitchen – four – to – sorry

My name is Zain. I am in grade ......(1)...... . I live in a house with my family. I live in a village next ......(2)...... the Nile. My house is very big. It has two bedrooms, two bathrooms, and a ......(3)...... . There are tall trees ......(4)...... the house.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

...... / 6

My name is Ali. I live in Ashmoun. The farmers grow tomatoes, onions, potatoes, and wheat. In Ashmoun, we raise chickens, cows, goats, and sheep. Farmer are very good people. I go to the farm on Fridays. I want to be healthy, so I always eat healthy food. I enjoy eating vegetables and fruits. My favorite fruit is mango. It is really delicious.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The farmers grow ....

a) apples b) oranges c) figs d) wheat

2 The farmers raise .... on the farm.

a) chickens b) camels c) horses d) fox

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Ali live? ....

4 When does Ali go to the farm? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

...... / 4

1 The camel is .... (tall) than the lion.

2 The sunflower is the .... (bigger) flower.

3 I think the spider .... (are) scary.

4 I .... (eats) vegetables every day.

6 Punctuate the following:

...... / 1

My name is ahmed

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

...... / 5

"The pelican"

- What can it do?
- What does it eat?

....

....

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. Camels are .... for the desert.
   a) not perfect b) not good c) ugly d) perfect
2. Camels are beautiful, ... animals.
   a) strong b) weak c) small d) scary
3. Camels' milk is ....
   a) bad b) not good c) ugly d) healthy
4. We use camels' fur to make ....
   a) shoes b) leather c) clothes d) tables

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. The garbage collectors take away our ....
   a) clothes b) food c) water d) garbage
2. The air is .... in the city because of traffic.
   a) nice b) polluted c) clean d) good
3. She lives on a .... She likes to live on water.
   a) tent b) houseboat c) cave d) school
4. Plants in the desert habitat don't need a lot of ....
   a) sugar b) water c) sand d) trees

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

beautiful – ears – water – horns – grass

Rhim gazelles are ....(1)............ animals. They have big ....(2)............ and long ....(3)......... . They eat ....(4)......... . They have yellow-white coats. They live in the Sahara Desert. They can live without water for a long time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Jan has a new bike, her new bike is red. It has an orange flag on the back. Jan can ride her bike fast. She rides her bike after school. She goes to Allison's house and then they study their lessons together. Jan is good at math, but Allison is good at English. They have lunch together. Then, Jan goes back home.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Jan can ride her bike ....

a) fast b) slow c) bad d) badly

2 Jan is good at ....

a) English b) math c) Arabic d) science

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is the color of the bike? ....

4 Who does Jan have lunch with? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Let's .... (eating) our lunch.

2 That .... (are) the water dripping from the faucet.

3 The camel is .... (strong) than the horse.

4 The desert is very interesting, ... (and) it is very hot.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

Where s the post office

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Farmers"

grow – raise

....

....

....

Exam 10 محافظة دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة التعليمية 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Rhim gazelles eat ....

a) dates b) fruits c) leaves d) cookies

2 Rhim gazelles have long ....

a) teeth b) hair c) horns d) arms

3 Rhim gazelles look very ....

a) sad b) ugly c) bad d) beautiful

4 Rhim gazelles' .... protect them from the Sun.

a) horns b) hair c) feet d) coats

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The .... connects pipes and faucets to give us water.

a) mail carrier b) mechanic c) electrician d) plumber

2 My friend is .... because he didn't pass the final exam.

a) excited b) disappointed c) different d) patient

3 "........................" means someone who doesn't lie.

a) Honest b) Patient c) Curious d) Interesting

4 Farmers work in the .... habitat.

a) desert b) lakes c) agricultural d) rivers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

quickly – surprising – change – knows – encourage

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask ....(1)......... questions. A teacher can ....(2)......... their students' lives, so teachers need to be patient. Teachers need to think ....(3)......... . Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class ....(4)......... different things.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

My name is Khaled. I live with my parents in Damietta. We plant different seeds to make the farm green. We use the Nile water to water the seeds. We grow many fruits like mangoes, oranges, and guavas. We raise farm animals like sheep, goats, cows, and chickens. Cows and goats give us meat and milk. We get fresh eggs from the chickens. The air isn't polluted. We breathe fresh air. Life is good in our farm.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Khaled lives with his ....

a) mom and dad b) cousins c) grandparents d) uncles

2 The underlined word "polluted" means ....

a) good b) healthy c) unhealthy d) fresh

B Answer the following questions:

3 What plants do we grow in our governorate? ....

4 What do we use to water the crops? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 The crocodile is .... (big) than the snake.

2 These are the electrician's .... (tool).

3 What .... (does) librarians look after?

4 The kitchen is .... (above) to the living room.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

foxes and camels are desert animals

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Electricians"

important – connect

....

....

....





Exam 11 محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم 30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 The fennec fox lives in the ....

a) desert b) sea c) river d) lake

2 It is .... than other foxes.

a) bigger b) smaller c) older d) taller

3 The fennec fox has .... ears.

a) small b) big c) tiny d) hot

4 It eats ....

a) camels b) heat c) fur d) insects

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 We .... chickens in Egypt.

a) raise b) make c) do d) plant

2 .... catch fish in the sea.

a) Farmers b) Fishermen c) Gardeners d) Electricians

3 We water the .... every day.

a) schools b) plants c) books d) blocks

4 Huda is .... and helps people.

a) experiment b) patient c) screwdriver d) impolite

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

surprising – amazing – perfect – fur – cross

Camels are ....(1).......... . They are strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to ....(2).......... the desert. We can use their ....(3).......... to make clothes. Camels are ....(4).......... for the desert. But they are noisy and can get angry.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Alexandria is a big city in Egypt. It is in the north of Egypt on the sea. About 5 million people live in this part of Egypt. I visit Alexandria with my family in the summer. We go by bus. When we go to Alexandria, I swim on the beach with my brothers and sisters. Alexandria is famous for its amazing beaches and Alexandria Library. Tourists like to visit Alexandria governorate.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) Luxor b) Alexandria c) Cairo d) Giza

2 I visit Alexandria with my family in the ....

a) summer b) winter c) spring d) spring

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where is Alexandria? ....

4 How many people live in Alexandria? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 A horse is .... (short) than a camel.

2 Crocodiles .... (is) dangerous.

3 I want to play football, ... (and) my leg hurts.

4 A: How .... (long) is a horse? B: It's 400 kg.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

fishermen catch fish in the sea

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Adel and his farm"

What can he grow? What can he raise?

....

....

....

Exam 12 محافظة بورسعيد - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 I want to be an ....

a) doctor b) electrician c) teacher d) engineer

2 Electricity is very ....

a) safe b) nice c) dangerous d) interesting

3 You shouldn't touch anything electrical with .... hands.

a) wet b) your c) dry d) two

4 You never put anything into a ...., only use plugs.

a) bag b) box c) socket d) cupboard

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Spider is a .... insect.

a) beautiful b) scary c) nice d) big

2 Our house is old. We need to .... it.

a) recook b) repaint c) reread d) rewrite

3 We send letters at the ....

a) hospital b) school c) supermarket d) post office

4 We plant a seed and the seed grows, that is called ....

a) information b) germination c) cutting d) fraction

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

school – fruits – animals – gets – factory

My grandfather is a farmer. He ....(1).......... up early every day. He grows vegetables and ....(2).......... . He sends a lot of fruits to the ....(3).......... to make juice. He keeps ....(4).......... for meat and birds for eggs. I visit him on holiday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruits like bananas, apples, and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. When they grew up, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees because they are important for our life.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) growing trees b) growing mango c) keeping animals d) playing tennis

2 Hisham and Amr grow many kinds of ....

a) vegetables b) fruits c) rice d) dessert

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why did Amr want to cut down the trees? ....

4 What did Hisham advise Amr to do? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Electricity is very important, ... (and) it's very dangerous.

2 A: .... (Who) is the hospital? B: Next to the school.

3 We live in a village .... (under) to the Nile.

4 The mechanic .... (fix) buses and cars.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

which food comes from egypt?

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Camels"

- cross the desert
- live without water

....

....

....

Exam 13 محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين التعليمية





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1 The new apartment has .... rooms.
a) four b) six c) five d) seven

2 Mona likes the ....
a) balcony b) living room c) bedroom d) kitchen

3 Mona can see the whole .... from the balcony.
a) street b) desert c) river d) village

4 The new apartment is ....
a) small b) lovely c) not big d) bad

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 We need to grow .... to make bread.
a) lemons b) potatoes c) wheat d) guava

2 A .... is an insect. It gives us honey.
a) bee b) pea c) pin d) pie

3 The air in big cities is .... because of factories and cars.
a) fresh b) polluted c) clean d) nice

4 Nora is a .... She delivers parcels to all the city.
a) doctor b) mechanic c) plumber d) mail carrier

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

hospital – learn – shopping mall – letters – clothes

There are different places in my town. We buy food at the supermarket. We send ....(1)........ at the post office. I ....(2)........ at school. I buy clothes and shoes at the ....(3)........ . My mom and dad work in an office. We go to the ....(4)........ when we are sick.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Kareem. I live with my family in Ismailia. We have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. Today, we are having potatoes and chicken for lunch. It looks delicious!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We are having potatoes and chicken for .... today.
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) break

2 We have .... meals every day.
a) two b) one c) four d) three

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Kareem's family live? ....

4 Why does Kareem like lunch? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 The giraffes are the .... (tall) animals.

2 She likes to play football, ... (and) she can't play it.

3 This .... (are) the socket the electrician is fixing.

4 My school is next .... (two) the park.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

what color are the tomatoes

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Papyrus"

famous – warm

....

....

....



Exam 14 محافظة بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى التعليمية





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 We grow .... on the balcony.

a) sugarcane b) potatoes c) tomatoes d) rice

2 We water the plants every ....

a) Friday b) Sunday c) week d) day

3 The .... grows under the soil.

a) roots b) leaves c) fruit d) vegetables

4 Tomatoes have .... inside.

a) bananas b) seeds c) colors d) milk

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Spiders eat ....

a) birds b) insects c) fish d) snakes

2 Some people live in a/an .... in the desert.

a) tent b) houseboat c) apartment d) balcony

3 A/An .... fixes pipes.

a) electrician b) farmer c) plumber d) mail carrier

4 The .... energy is a renewable energy.

a) wood b) gas c) coal d) solar

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

down – trees – sold – happy – garden

My friend Ahmed needed money to buy things. He had a lot of ....(1)....... in the garden. He cut ....(2)....... a lot of trees. He ....(3)....... them. He looked out of the window. He was very sad because there were no trees in the ....(4)....... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

My name is Salma. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and two bathrooms. My mother cooks food in the kitchen. We watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes, lemons, and onions.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Salma's favorite room is the ....

a) bathroom b) living room c) bedroom d) kitchen

2 Salma is in grade ....

a) six b) five c) three d) four

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Salma's mother cook food? ....

4 What does Salma's father grow? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 I play basketball .... (but) football in the park.

2 The horse is .... (short) than the camel.

3 These children .... (is) watching TV.

4 The elephant is the .... (bigger) animal in the zoo.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

do you want to be a teacher

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Rhim gazelle"

horns – desert

....

....

....

Exam 15 محافظة بنى سويف 30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Ali is a ....

a) farmer b) guide c) librarian d) fisherman

2 He works in a ....

a) field b) library c) industry d) sea

3 He looks after all the ....

a) books b) fish c) tourists d) crops

4 He helps children to find the .... they need.

a) tools b) information c) nets d) classes

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The fennec fox lives in the ....

a) desert b) river c) lake d) sea

2 A/An .... fixes cars and buses.

a) electrician b) mechanic c) farmer d) teacher

3 I sleep in the ....

a) bathroom b) kitchen c) bedroom d) garden

4 Tomatoes are .... before they are red.

a) pink b) blue c) black d) green

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

perfect – carry – strong – feet – desert

Camels help us a lot. They are ....(1).......... animals. They can ....(2).......... heavy things, and they are perfect for the ....(3).......... . Camels are not heavier than elephants, and they have specials eyes. They have flat ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

My dad is an electrician. He connects electricity to houses. He helps people use lights, watch TV, and use computers. Electricity is important but it can harm us, too. My dad knows how to work safely with electricity. He uses a screwdriver and never touches electrical things with wet hands. He never puts anything in a socket.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Dad can connect .... to houses.

a) electricity b) waiter c) faucet d) wall

2 Dad uses a .... to keep safe.

a) pipe b) pen c) screwdriver d) wire

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is dad's job? ....

4 How does an electrician help people? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 I don't like candy, ... (and) I like fruit.

2 Sunflower is the .... (big) flower.

3 .... (These) car is very expensive.

4 The camel is .... (tall) than the dog.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

how do we grow plants

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"The fennec fox"

desert – ears

....

....

....



Exam 16 محافظة أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1 There are a lot of .... in our country.
   a) birds b) insects c) animals d) fish

2 The crocodile is .... and scary.
   a) huge b) small c) long d) thin

3 The .... is scarier.
   a) bird b) giraffe c) spider d) ant

4 Spiders are very ...., because they eat insects.
   a) helpful b) ugly c) tall d) bad

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 My favorite fruits are bananas and ....
   a) onions b) chickens c) potatoes d) grapes

2 The .... is the place where I learn.
   a) school b) office c) shopping mall d) hospital

3 A/An .... fixed pipes and faucets.
   a) mechanic b) driver c) plumber d) electrician

4 Coal and oil are .... energy sources.
   a) renewable b) non-renewable c) new d) old

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

heat – hooves – insects – foxes – ears

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other ....(1).......... . Its ....(2).......... are big, really big. The fennec fox needs the big ears to hear ....(3).......... and small animals. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses ....(4).......... from its ears.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

My name is Nada. My mom is a teacher. She really likes her job. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives, so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Everyone in the class knows different things.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Nada's mom is a ....

a) nurse b) doctor c) teacher d) vet

2 Teachers work for .... hours.

a) little b) few c) many d) minutes

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why do teachers need to be very patient? ....

4 What makes a good teacher? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 The bank is .... (on) to the school.

2 The sunflower is the .... (heavy) flower.

3 I like chocolate .... (because) candy.

4 The school .... (are) a place where we learn.

6 Punctuate the following: (1)

where's my fish

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Different house"

live in an apartment – live in a houseboat

....

....

....

Exam 17 محافظة أسيوط 30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 We put a .... in the soil.

a) root b) leave c) seed d) branch

2 The seed .... water to grow.

a) helps b) needs c) wants d) goes

3 The roots grow .... the soil.

a) under b) above c) next to d) between

4 The plants give us ....

a) books b) fruits c) fish d) milk

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 We should .... a lot of sports.

a) do b) make c) eat d) drink

2 The pelican has a long ....

a) paw b) beak c) hair d) head

3 I don't like the .... air and the noise.

a) fresh b) cool c) polluted d) nice

4 A/An .... drives to many different places.

a) mechanic b) driver c) plumber d) electrician

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

safety – electricity – electrician – teacher – screwdriver

When Lama was a child, she was very curious. She always carried a ....(1)......... and opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had ....(2)......... . Her favorite question was How does it work? She learned about ....(3)......... with electricity. Now, Lama is an ....(4)......... and she loves her job very much.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Different people live in different places. My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony. My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water. In the desert, some people live in a tent. This home is made of cloth. I love living in a house because it is big. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 There is a big .... in the apartment.

a) bed b) TV c) balcony d) couch

2 My friend lives on a .... on water.

a) tent b) house c) apartment d) houseboat

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is the tent made of? ....

4 Where do people in the desert live? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 I think I'm healthy. I like to .... (played) basketball.

2 A: .... (What) works on the sea? B: The fishermen.

3 .... (Going) straight and turn left.

4 The mouse is .... (small) than the lion.

6 Punctuate the following:

1

hurgada is on the Red Sea

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My favorite animal"

Which animal do you like? - What color is it?

....

....

....



Exam 1 — Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



1. Hossam's favorite room is the ....
   (kitchen – bedroom – living room – dining room)
2. Hossam .... do his homework quietly.
   (can't – can – is – are)
3. Hossam has a .... balcony.
   (small – big – cold – hot)



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:



live – houseboat – you – Nile

Hazem : Where do ....(1).......... live?
Anas : I live on a ....(2).........., what about you?
Hazem : I ....(3).......... in a village next to the ....(4).......... .



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:



I'm Zain. I'm in grade four. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice four times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I eat healthy food. I eat fruit and vegetables. I play basketball with my friends in the park.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Zain is in grade ....
   (three – four – five)
2. He likes to play ....
   (volleyball – tennis – basketball)
3. Zain wants to drink more ....
   (juice – water – milk)

B Answer the following questions:

4 How many times do they practice every week? ....

5 What does Zain eat? ....

Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

5

1 I sleep in a big .... It has two big beds.

a) bathroom b) bedroom c) kitchen

2 A: .... is the cat? B: It's under the table.

a) What b) Why c) Where

3 The mouse is .... than the elephant.

a) smallest b) smaller c) small

4 .... keep the school clean.

a) Cleaners b) Plumbers c) Teachers

5 Camels are perfect for the ....

a) sea b) lake c) desert

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

1 next – My home – is – the – to – school.

....

2 park – play – the – I – in – football.

....

3 are – and – in – The pelican – the bear – the river.

....

4 is – the – Where – mall – shopping?

....

5 you – helping – Do – people – like?

....





Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



1 Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....
(food – paper – cheese – water)
2 Papyrus needs a lot of ....
(sand – seeds – water – air)
3 Papyrus needs .... weather to grow.
(cool - cold - warm - hot)



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:



fantastic – homework – apartment – room

Mom : Look at our lovely new ....(1)..........!
Talia : It's ....(2)..........!
Mom : Which is your favorite ....(3)..........?
Talia : For me it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my ....(4).......... quietly.



Reading Comprehension

3 Reorder the text and answer the questions:



The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

A Choose the correct answer:

1 .... catch thousands of fish.
(Farmers – Fishermen – Sheep)
2 The underlined word "good" means ....
(bad – old – nice)
3 Domiati cheese is very ....
(famous – awful – bad)

B Answer the following questions:

4 What can farmers grow in Damietta? ....

5 How many people live in Damietta? ....

Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

5

1 The roots grow under the ....

a) balcony b) bed c) soil

2 The .... is a bird.

a) horse b) pelican c) bear

3 The plumber fixes the pipes and ....

a) lights b) faucets c) electricity

4 The park is next .... the museum.

a) in b) from c) to

5 I think cats are .... than dogs.

a) nice b) nicer c) nicest

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:



1 lives – village – in – Sami – small – a.

....

2 reading – Now, – I'm – story – a.

....

3 desert – Horses – live – in – can – the.

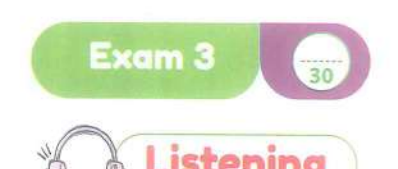
....

4 are – people – there – many – How?

....

5 fixes – and – buses – A – cars – mechanic.

....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



1. A plumber .... faucets.
   (cleans – takes away – fixes – drives)
2. An electrician connects .... to homes.
   (water – garbage – houses – electricity)
3. .... takes away all the garbage.
   (A plumber – A garbage collector – A bus driver – An electrician)

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:



mango – kind – but – like

Mona : I don't eat candy, ...(1).......... I like fruit.
Huda : I ....(2).......... fruit, too.
Mona : What ....(3).......... of fruit do you like?
Huda : I like ....(4).......... .

Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:





Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. They walk all day and get a lot of exercise. They also carry a heavy mail bag all day. They are very tired when they come back home.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Mail carriers walk all the day and get a lot of ....
   (cars – electricity – weather – exercise)
2. The mail bag is ....
   (happy – tall – heavy – fast)
3. They are very .... when they come back home.
   (beautiful – happy – tired)

B Answer the following questions:

4 Where are the mail carriers all day? ....

5 What do they do all day? ....

Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

5

1 We watch TV together in the ....
a) bathroom b) balcony c) living room d) kitchen

2 The bear is .... the pelican.
a) stronger b) strongest c) more stronger d) stronger than

3 I want to play football, ... I hurt my leg.
a) and b) but c) so d) because

4 Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
a) blue b) yellow c) green d) brown

5 An emperor is someone who is like a ....
a) fisherman b) postman c) doctor d) king

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

1 have – Camels – large – feet – flat.

....

2 inside – have – Tomatoes – seeds.

....

3 soil – grow – the – Roots – under.

....

4 animals – All – important – are.

....

5 rhim – What – do – eat – gazelles?

....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



1 The rose is .... than the sunflower.
(bigger – longer – smaller – taller)

2 The .... is the smallest flower.
(sunflower – daisy – rose – sun)

3 The sunflower is the .... flower.
(heaviest – shortest – smallest – smaller)



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:



be – change – patient – want

Ahmed : What do you ....(1).............. to be?
Omar : I want to ....(2).............. a teacher.
Mona : A teacher can ....(3).............. their students' lives.
Huda : Yes, so teachers need to be very ....(4).............. .



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Mahmoud. I'm ten years old. I'm in primary four. Last week, I went to the zoo. I went there with my family. We went there by bus. I like animals. For me, my favorite animal is the rhim gazelle. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They eat grass and plants.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 Mahmoud is .... years old.
(eight – nine – ten – eleven)

2 Mahmoud and his family went to the zoo by ....
(bus – car – taxi – train)

3 Rhim gazelles look very ....
(beautiful – ugly – sad)

B Answer the following questions:

4 What color is the rhim gazelles' coat? ....

5 What do rhim gazelles eat? ....

Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

5

1 .... catch a lot of fish in the sea.

a) Fishermen b) Postmen c) Doctors d) Teachers

2 Camels can live without .... for a long time.

a) air b) water c) fur d) feet

3 Can you .... me?

a) help b) helps c) helping d) helped

4 The air in big cities is .... because of factories and cars.

a) fresh b) polluted c) patient d) clean

5 .... are my new books.

a) That b) Those c) This d) the

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:



1 moved – new – Ahmed – to – apartment – a.

....

2 Camels – desert – are – fennec foxes – animals – and.

....

3 park – is – my house – to – The – next.

....

4 the – office – is – Where – post?

....

5 think – cats – dogs – than – are – nicer – I.

....

Exam 1

30

(A) Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text: 8

breakfast – do – bed – my

I get up at six o'clock. I wash ....(1).......... face. I have ....(2).......... at seven. I get dressed. I go to school at seven thirty. I ....(3).......... my homework in the evening. I watch TV at night. I go to ....(4).......... at ten o'clock.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 The guide works in the .... industry.

a) tourism b) education c) fishing d) farming

2 The rhim gazelles have big ears and long ....

a) eyes b) horns c) coats d) feet

3 The emperor lives in a ....

a) tent b) school c) palace d) hospital

4 They used rainwater to .... the seeds.

a) move b) eat c) dry d) water

3 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

I'm Noha. I went to the zoo last week. I went with my family. I went there by car. I arrived there at ten o'clock. I saw the lion and the tiger. I saw many birds. I was very happy. It was a nice day. We took many photos. We went home at seven p.m.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about a visit to the ....

a) museum b) zoo c) park d) desert

2 Noha went to the zoo ....

a) by herself b) alone c) on foot d) with her family

3 Noha saw .... at the zoo.

a) animals b) cars c) birds d) a & c

4 Noha went back home ....

a) in the morning b) in the afternoon c) in the evening d) at dawn

(B) Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c: (4)

1 is – next to – the – The school – museum.

a) The school the next to is museum.

b) The school is next to the museum.

c) The school next to the is museum.

2 faster – are – than – Cars – bikes.

a) Cars faster than are bikes.

b) Cars bikes are than faster.

c) Cars are faster than bikes.

5 Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d: (6)

a) I watched a match there. 1- ( )

b) Yesterday, I went to the stadium. 2- ( )

c) Then, I went to bed. 3- ( )

d) After the match, I went back home. 4- ( )



Exam 2

30



(A) Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

8

street – living room – big – play

I love my house. It is ....(1).......... . My grandparents live with us. I can ....(2).......... with my brother and sister in the garden. My favorite room is the ....(3).......... with a balcony. I can see the whole ....(4)..........!

Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 Fruits are .... and healthy.

a) sweet b) bad c) busy d) hot

2 The .... grow under the soil.

a) flowers b) seeds c) roots d) trees

3 He was sick, so he went to the ....

a) office b) school c) hospital d) zoo

4 I want to be a .... to catch fish every day.

a) teacher b) doctor c) fisherman d) vet

3 Read the text and answer the questions:



6

The fennec fox is a small animal. It is smaller than other foxes. It lives in the desert. It has big ears. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fox loses heat from its ears. At night, it is cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 During the day, it is .... in the desert.

a) long b) short c) small d) hot

2 The fox's thick .... keeps it warm.

a) mouth b) nose c) fur d) air

3 The fennec fox lives in the ....

a) sea b) desert c) park d) hospital

4 It is .... than other foxes.

a) smaller b) taller c) shorter d) older

(B) Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:

4

1 grow – the – Roots – soil – under.

a) Roots grow the soil under.

b) Roots grow the under soil.

c) Roots grow under the soil.

2 the – every day – water – plants – We.

a) We water the plants every day.

b) We plants the water every day.

c) We water the every day plants.

5 Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

6

a) After that, the shoot grows above the soil. 1- (   )

b) Next, put it in the sunlight and water it. 2- (   )

c) Finally, the flower opens. 3- (   )

d) First, put the seed under the soil. 4- (   )

Tapescripts

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

Yesterday, Hana and her mom made lunch in the kitchen. They cooked some special food. They cooked rice, potatoes, and chicken. They had bananas and mangoes after lunch. The food was very delicious. Hana was very happy.

Practice on Lesson 3

Yesterday, I read a story about an emperor who lived in a nice palace. He said, "There will be a competition to choose the next emperor." He gave a seed to each gardener and the one who could grow the most beautiful plant, would be the next emperor.

Test Yourself on Unit 1

My name is Talia. I think I'm healthy. I do a lot of sports. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops.

Al-Azhar Corner

Adam is in a wheelchair basketball team at school. He practices three times every week. He drinks cola, but he wants to drink more water. He doesn't play video games because he is busy.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

There are a lot of animals that live in our country. The crocodile is huge and scary. The spider is scary, but it is very helpful. Farmers like spiders because they eat insects. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

Practice on Lesson 3

Yesterday, I read a story about a pelican and a bear. They were very hungry. They were by the river and saw a big, juicy fish. The bear was stronger than the pelican, but it was kinder than all other bears. It gave the fish to the pelican.

Test Yourself on Unit 2

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

Today, I read about the germination process. We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs water to grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot. A shoot grows taller to have leaves. Finally, the plant grows flowers and fruits.

Practice on Lesson 3

Lama lives on a farm in Egypt. It is a very special farm. Her parents work hard and they plant lots of vegetables and fruits. Lama likes living on the farm. She doesn't like the city. She doesn't like the polluted air and the noise.

Test Yourself on Unit 3

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

My name is Hossam. I moved to a new apartment last month. It is fantastic. My favorite room is my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly. We have a big balcony, too. I can see the whole street.

Practice on Lesson 3

I'm Khalid. I live in a small town. It's a good place to live in. I walk to school every day. My school is next to the post office. There's a hospital in front of my school. I really love my town.

Test Yourself on Unit 4

This is Nada. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Nada checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Amr. I'm a plumber. Sometimes, it's wet and messy because I have to fix pipes and faucets. I love being a plumber because I like being able to help people when they have a big problem. People are always happy to see the plumber.



Practice on Lesson 3

My name is Ola. When I was a baby, I played with blocks. I put one block on the top of another. When I was older, I started making things. I made a little house for my dog and a bed for my sister's doll.

Test Yourself on Unit 5

There are some pros and cons of being a mail carrier. Mail carriers work outside all day. It's true that mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. But they carry heavy mail bags as well. They wake up very early.

UNIT 6

Practice on Lesson 1

My dad is a fisherman. He wakes up very early every day. He goes out on his boat and catches fish. He comes back in the afternoon and sells the fish at the market. My dad's fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

Practice on Lesson 3

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish." Everyone in the village likes his fresh fish.

Test Yourself on Unit 6

Seleem is a farmer. He grows oranges. All year, he looks after the trees and he gives them water and nutrients. Then, he picks the fruit. He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice.

نصوص استماع الامتحانات النهائية

Exam 1

Camels are very important animals in Egypt. They are tall and strong. We use them to carry people and things through the desert. Camels' milk is healthy and delicious. We can use camels' fur to make clothes.

Exam 2

There are a lot of important jobs. We should respect all of them. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets. An electrician connects electricity to homes. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage. A bus driver takes children to school.

Exam 3

There are many different animals live in our world. The lion is very strong. It lives in the forest. Lions can catch many animals to eat because they eat meat. It has four legs. It's brown and yellow.

Exam 4

Maged and his family live in Egypt. They have breakfast together. Maged thinks the food is delicious. His dad told him that farmers in Egypt grow a lot of foods. They grow rice and wheat. They also raise animals like chickens.

Exam 5

Yesterday, I read a story about an emperor who lived in a nice palace. He said, "There will be a competition to choose the next emperor." He gave a seed to each gardener and the one who could grow the most beautiful plant, he would be the next emperor.

Exam 6

This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

Exam 7

We grow many things such as fruit and vegetables. We grow tomatoes. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes. The roots grow under the soil. The flowers become red tomato fruits.



Exam 8

My name is Ahmed. I am in grade four. I am ten years old. I live in Damietta with my family. My favorite hobby is playing football. My father is a farmer and he has a big farm. I like helping him.

Exam 9

Camels are perfect for the desert. They are beautiful, strong animals. We use them to carry people and things through the desert. Camels' milk is healthy and delicious. We can use camels' fur to make clothes.

Exam 10

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They look very beautiful. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun.

Exam 11

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are very big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards, and small mice.

Exam 12

I want to be an electrician. I have to study and practice for years. You should be careful when you use electricity. It is very dangerous. You shouldn't touch anything electrical with wet hands. You never put anything into a socket only use plugs.

Exam 13

My name is Mona. I live with my family. We moved to a new apartment last week. The new apartment has four rooms. My favorite room is the bedroom. I can see the whole street from the balcony. The new apartment is lovely.

Exam 14

I live in a big village with my family. My school is near my house. We grow tomatoes on the balcony. We should water the plants every day. The roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes have seeds inside.

Exam 15

Ali is a librarian. He works in a school library. His job is to look after all the books. He buys lots of new books and he helps children to find the information they need. He always works hard.

Exam 16

There are a lot of animals live in our country such as snakes, spiders, and crocodiles. Crocodiles are very huge and scary. I think spiders are scarier, but they do a very important job. They are very helpful, because they eat insects.

Exam 17

We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seeds grow roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the plants give us fruits.

امتحانات الأزهر الشريف

Exam 1

Hossam's favorite room is the bedroom. He can do his homework quietly. He has a big balcony. He can see the whole street from it.

Exam 2

Papyrus is very special plant because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow.

Exam 3

There are a lot of important jobs. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets. An electrician connects electricity to homes. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage.

Exam 4

The rose is smaller than the sunflower. The daisy is the smallest flower. The rose is heavier than the daisy. The sunflower is the heaviest flower.

Writing Answers

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1 Lesson 2

"I am healthy"

Being healthy makes you feel happy. You can eat fruits and vegetables. It's important to do a lot of sports. I practice 3 times every week.

UNIT 1 Lessons 4&5

"My governorate"

I live in Cairo Governorate. It's a busy city. It's famous for its tall buildings and busy streets. Farmers grow rice, potatoes, and tomatoes.

Test Yourself on Unit 1

"Food in our country"

Egyptian farmers produce food for people to eat. They grow fruits and vegetables. They raise animals and chickens to get food.

UNIT 2 Lesson 1

"Animals in Egypt"

In Egypt, there are many interesting animals like spiders and crocodiles. Farmers like spiders because they eat insects. Spiders really look scary, but they are very helpful.

UNIT 2 Lesson 2

"The camel is my favorite animal"

Camels live in deserts. They are strong and beautiful animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert.

UNIT 2 Lessons 4&5

"Rhim gazelles"

Rhim Gazelles are beautiful animals with big ears and long horns. They live in the desert. They eat plants like grass and leaves.

Test Yourself on Unit 2

"Rhim gazelle"

Rhim Gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They eat plants like grass and leaves. They have yellow-white coats.

UNIT 3 Lesson 1

"Tomatoes"

We plant a seed. The roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

UNIT 3 Lesson 2

"The differences between flowers"

The flowers are beautiful but they are different. The sunflower is the biggest flower. The sunflower is the heaviest.

UNIT 3 Lessons 4&5

"The life cycle of a sunflower"

First, plant the sunflower seed in soil, put it in sunlight, and water it. Next, it starts to grow. After that, it opens and faces the sun. Finally, it dies and drops its seeds.

Test Yourself on Unit 3

"Papyrus"

Papyrus is famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. It needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly.



UNIT 4 Lesson 1

"My favorite room"

I like my bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I can relax and sleep there.

UNIT 4 Lesson 2

"Places in my town"

I live in a small town. My school is near my house. There is a supermarket next to my house where I can buy food.

UNIT 4 Lessons 4&5

"My city"

I live in Cairo. It's big and busy. There are interesting places to visit in Cairo like the Nile and the Egyptian Museum.

Test Yourself on Unit 4

"My house"

I live with my family in a big house. There are four rooms in my house. My favorite room is the living room because it has a balcony.

UNIT 5 Lesson 1

"I like being a plumber"

I love being a plumber. It is an important job. Sometimes it's wet and messy because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

UNIT 5 Lesson 2

"How to work safely with electricity"

Electricity is very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, it can burn us. You shouldn't put anything into a socket, only use plugs. Never touch anything electrical with wet hands.

UNIT 5 Lessons 4&5

"Workers who made our school"

All jobs are important. Cleaners and plumbers are workers who made our school. Cleaners keep our school clean. The plumbers connect pipes so that we have water. Bus drivers bring the children to school.

Test Yourself on Unit 5

"Different jobs"

People in my city have different jobs. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water.

UNIT 6 Lesson 2

"Renewable and non-renewable energy sources"

There are renewable and non-renewable energy sources. Renewable energy sources never run out like wave, solar, and wind. Oil, gas, and coal are non-renewable energy sources.

UNIT 6 Lessons 4&5

"My favorite job"

I want to be a teacher because every day is different. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient.

Test Yourself on Unit 6

"A librarian"

A librarian works in a school library. He looks after all the books. He helps children find the information they need.